<u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830.book 1 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

This manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is resold.

This publication includes the latest production information available before printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

#### Models equipped with Navigation System

For Navigation System operating instructions, refer to the Navigation System manual.

No part of this publication may be reproduced without written permission.

The vehicle pictured in this owner's manual may not match your actual vehicle.

© 2020 Honda Motor Co., Ltd.

#### Welcome

Congratulations on your purchase of a new Honda vehicle. Your selection of a Honda makes you part of a worldwide family of satisfied customers who appreciate Honda's reputation for building quality into every product.

To ensure your safety and riding pleasure:

- Read this owner's manual carefully.
- Follow all recommendations and procedures contained in this manual.
- Pay close attention to safety messages contained in this manual and on the vehicle.

- The following codes in this manual indicate each country.
- The illustrations here in are based on the GL1800DA III ED type.

#### **Country Codes**

-	
Code GL1800	Country
GL 1800	
IIE	UK
II ED	European direct sales
III GS, VI GS	GCC Countries
III SA	South Africa
TU	Turkey
GL1800B	
III E	UK
III ED	European direct sales
III GS, VI GS	GCC Countries
II TU	Turkey
GL1800BD	
III E	UK
III ED	European direct sales
II GS, V GS	GCC Countries
II TU	Turkey
III U	Australia, New Zealand

#### GL1800DA

III E	UK
III ED	European direct sales
III GS, VI GS	GCC Countries
III SA	South Africa
TU, II TU	Turkey
III U	Australia, New Zealand

\*The specifications may vary with each locale.

#### **A Few Words About Safety**

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. Operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on safety labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all hazards associated with operating or maintaining a vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- Safety labels on the vehicle
- Safety Messages preceded by a safety alert symbol **A** and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION

These signal words mean:

# **ADANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

# 

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

# **ACAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

#### Other important information is provided under the following titles:



NOTICE Information to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

①
 ②
 ③
 ③
 ③
 ③
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □

### Contents

P. 2	
P. 22	
P. 156	
P. 188	
P. 219	
P. 252	
P. 256	
	P. 22 P. 156 P. 188 P. 219 P. 252

# **Vehicle Safety**

-

**4** 

This section contains important information for safe riding of your vehicle. Please read this section carefully.

Safety Guidelines	P. 3
Image Labels	P. 6
Safety Precautions	
Riding Precautions	P. 17
Accessories & Modifications	P. 21
Loading	P. 21

+ -

# **Safety Guidelines**

Follow these guidelines to enhance your safety:

- Perform all routine and regular inspections specified in this manual.
- Stop the engine and keep sparks and flame away before filling the fuel tank.
- Do not run the engine in enclosed or partly enclosed areas. Carbon monoxide in exhaust gases is toxic and can kill you.
- Do not ride the vehicle with the mirrors folded inward, as the mirrors can interfere with the handlebar controls.

# **AWARNING**

Riding the vehicle with the mirrors folded inward can interfere with your ability to safely operate the vehicle and could lead to a crash which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Make sure the mirrors are fully extended outward and secured in place before riding the vehicle.

#### Always Wear a Helmet

It's a proven fact: helmets and protective apparel significantly reduce the number and severity of head and other injuries. So always wear an approved helmet and protective apparel. **D**P. 14

#### **Before Riding**

Make sure that you are physically fit, mentally focused and free of alcohol and drugs.

Check that you and your passenger are both wearing an approved helmet and protective apparel. Instruct your passenger on holding onto the grab rails or your waist, leaning with you in turns, and keeping their feet on the step boards, even when the vehicle is stopped. **Safety Guidelines** 

#### Take Time to Learn & Practice

Even if you have ridden other vehicles, practice riding in a safe area to become familiar with how this vehicle works and handles, and to become accustomed to the vehicle's size and weight.

continued 3

**Safety Guidelines** 

#### **Ride Defensively**

Vehicle Safety

Always pay attention to other vehicles around you, and do not assume that other drivers see you. Be prepared to stop quickly or perform an evasive maneuver.

#### Make Yourself Easy to See

Make yourself more visible, especially at night, by wearing bright reflective clothing, positioning yourself so other drivers can see you, signaling before turning or changing lanes, and using your horn when necessary.

#### **Ride within Your Limits**

Never ride beyond your personal abilities or faster than conditions warrant. Fatigue and inattention can impair your ability to use good judgement and ride safely.

#### Don't Drink or Use Drugs and Ride

Alcohol or drugs and riding don't mix. Even one alcoholic drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. The same is true for drug use. Don't drink or use and ride, and don't let your friends do it either.

#### Keep Your Honda in Safe Condition

It's important to keep your vehicle properly maintained and in safe riding condition. Inspect your vehicle before every ride and perform all recommended maintenance. Never exceed load limits (➡ P. 21), and do not modify your vehicle or install accessories that would make your vehicle unsafe (➡ P. 21).

#### If You are Involved in a Crash

Personal safety is your first priority. If you or anyone else has been injured, take time to assess the severity of the injuries and whether it is safe to continue riding. Call for emergency assistance if needed. Also follow applicable laws and regulations if another person or vehicle is involved in the crash.

If you decide to continue riding, first turn the ignition switch to  $\mathbf{O}$  (Off), and evaluate the condition of your vehicle. Inspect for fluid leaks, check the tightness of critical nuts and bolts, and check the handlebars, control levers, brakes, and wheels. Ride slowly and cautiously.

Your vehicle may have suffered damage that is not immediately apparent. Have your vehicle thoroughly checked at a qualified service facility as soon as possible.

#### **Carbon Monoxide Hazard**

Exhaust contains poisonous carbon monoxide, a colourless, odorless gas. Breathing carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and may lead to death.

If you run the engine in confined or even partly enclosed area, the air you breathe could contain a dangerous amount of carbon monoxide. Never run your vehicle inside a garage or other enclosure.

#### **A**WARNING

Running the engine of your vehicle while in an enclosed or even partially enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide gas.

Breathing this colourless, odorless gas can quickly cause unconsciousness and lead to death.

Only run your vehicle's engine when it is located in a well ventilated area outdoors.



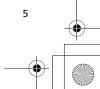


Image Labels

# **Image Labels**

Vehicle Safety

The following pages describe the label meanings. Some labels warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury. Others provide important safety information. Read this information carefully and don't remove the labels.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact your dealer for a replacement.

There is a specific symbol on each label. The meanings of each symbol and label are as follows.



Read instructions contained in Owner's Manual carefully.



Read instructions contained in Shop Manual carefully. In the interest of safety, take the vehicle to be serviced only by your dealer.

#### DANGER (with RED background)

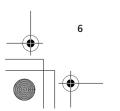
 $\triangle$ 

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions. WARNING (with ORANGE background)

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

CAUTION (with YELLOW background)

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.



#### <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 7 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Image Labels





#### **BATTERY LABEL**

#### DANGER

- Keep flame and spark away from the battery. Battery produce explosive gas that can cause explosion.
- Wear the eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery, or you can get burned or lose your eyesight by the battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children and other people to touch a battery unless they understand proper handling and hazards of the battery very well.
- Handle the battery electrolyte with extreme care as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Contact with your skin or eyes can burn you or cause loss of your eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully and understand it before handling the battery. Neglect of the instructions can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use a battery with the electrolyte at or below the lower level mark. It can explode causing serious injury.



#### **RADIATOR CAP LABEL** DANGER

NEVER OPEN WHEN HOT. Hot coolant will scald you. Relief pressure valve begins to open at **1.1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>**.



continued 7

#### → 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 8 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### **Image Labels**

#### GL1800DA



GL1800

Vehicle Safety

8



GL1800B/BD



#### ACCESSORIES AND LOADING WARNING LABEL

#### WARNING

#### ACCESSORIES AND LOADING

- The safety stability and handling of this vehicle may be affected by the addition of accessories and luggage.
- Read carefully the instructions contained in user's manual and installation guide before installing any accessory.

#### GL1800DA

- The total weight of accessories and luggage added to rider's and passenger's weight should not exceed **203 kg (448 lb)**, which is the maximum weight capacity.
- The luggage weight must not exceed 29 kg (64 lb) under any circumstances.

#### GL1800

- The total weight of accessories and luggage added to rider's and passenger's weight should not exceed **206 kg (454 lb)**, which is the maximum weight capacity.
- The luggage weight must not exceed 32 kg (71 lb) under any circumstances.

#### GL1800B/BD

- The total weight of accessories and luggage added to rider's and passenger's weight should not exceed **205 kg (452 lb)**, which is the maximum weight capacity.
- The luggage weight must not exceed 23 kg (51 lb) under any circumstances.
- The fitting of large fork-mounted or large handlebar mounted fairing is not recommended.

→ <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 9 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

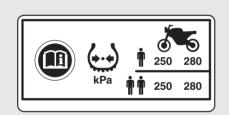
Image Labels



**FRONT/REAR CUSHION LABEL** GAS FILLED Do not open. Do not heat.



**SADDLEBAG LABEL** Heavy cargo placed on the open lid can damage the saddlebag and lid.



#### TYRE INFORMATION LABEL

 Cold tyre pressure:

 [Driver only]

 Front
 **250 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm², 36 psi)** 

 Rear
 **280 kPa (2.80 kgf/cm², 41 psi)** 

 [Driver and passenger]

 Front
 **250 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm², 36 psi)** 

 Rear
 **280 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm², 36 psi)** 

 Rear
 **280 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm², 41 psi)**

continued 9



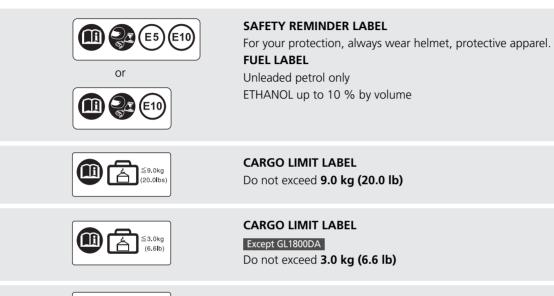
#### → <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 10 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Image Labels

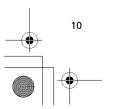
台

(4.5lbs)

Vehicle Safety



CARGO LIMIT LABEL Do not exceed 2.0 kg (4.5 lb)





#### TPMS LABEL

This vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Before removing and installing the tyre, see owner's manual.

#### **AIRBAG WARNING LABEL**

#### GL1800DA

All airbag system wires/connectors are yellow.

Disconnecting, tampering with, or using test equipment on any yellow wires or connectors can cause system damage or accidental deployment.

#### WARNING

Unexpected deployment could cause serious injury to you or others. Follow Shop Manual instructions carefully.





#### <u>21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 12 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

Image Labels

Vehicle Safety



#### AIRBAG WARNING LABEL B

# GL1800DA

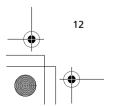
Airbag system wires and connectors are yellow.

Tampering with, cutting, splicing, or disconnecting yellow wires/connectors could cause airbag deployment or a system failure resulting in serious injury or death. Follow Shop Manual instructions carefully.



#### AIRBAG UNIT NOTICE LABEL

GL1800DA NOTICE No serviceable parts inside. Refer to Shop Manual for detailed instructions.



**Image Labels** 

#### AIRBAG MODULE WARNING LABEL

#### GL1800DA

DANGER

EXPLOSIVE/FLAMMABLE

Storage temperatures must not exceed 93°C (200°F). For proper handling, storage and disposal procedures refer to Shop Manual.

#### FIRST AID

If contents are swallowed, induce vomiting.

For eye contact, flush eyes with water for 15 minutes. In every case, get prompt medical attention.

#### KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN.

#### WARNING

The airbag inflator is explosive and, if accidentally deployed, can seriously hurt or kill you.

- Do not use electrical test equipment or probing devices. They can cause accidental deployment.
- No serviceable parts inside. Do not disassemble.
- Place airbag upright when removed.
- Follow Shop Manual instructions carefully.





**Safety Precautions** 

Vehicle Safety

14

# **Safety Precautions**

- Ride cautiously and keep your hands on the handlebars and feet on the footpegs.
- Keep passenger's hands onto the grab rails or your waist, passenger's feet on the step boards while riding.
- Always consider the safety of your passenger, as well as other drivers and riders.

#### **Protective Apparel**

Make sure that you and any passenger are wearing an approved helmet, eye protection, and high-visibility protective clothing. Avoid wearing loose clothes that could get caught on any part of the vehicle. Ride defensively in response to weather and road conditions.

#### Helmet

Should be safety-standard certified, highvisibility, and correct size for your head

- Must fit comfortably but securely, with the chin strap fastened
- Face shield with unobstructed field of vision or other approved eye protection

# **AWARNING**

Not wearing a helmet increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure that you and any passenger always wear an approved helmet and protective apparel.

#### Gloves

Full-finger leather gloves with high abrasion resistance

#### Boots or Riding Shoes

Sturdy boots with non-slip soles and ankle protection

#### Jacket and Trousers

Protective, highly visible, long-sleeved jacket and durable trousers for riding (or a protective suit)

#### **Airbag System**

#### GL1800DA

This section describes some important safety precautions. For airbag system components and features, see "Airbag System." **⊇**P. 70

The airbag system is an integral part of your vehicle and is covered by your new vehicle warranty.

The most important things you need to know about your airbag are:

• The airbag has a limited but very important role.

The airbag can reduce the severity of injuries and help save your life in certain severe frontal impacts. It cannot prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a crash, and some crashes are too severe for any safety feature or system to prevent death.

• The airbag is designed to deploy in a severe head-on or nearly head-on frontal impact. The impact can be with another vehicle or an object, such as a concrete highway barrier. A severe frontal impact is one in which the rider would be thrown forward off the front of the vehicle. • The airbag might deploy in a severe angled frontal collision, or in a sideswipe, or if the vehicle underrides the rear of another vehicle.

However, because there are many variables in a collision, the airbag might not be able to reduce the severity of injuries to the rider.

 The airbag might deploy if the front tyre drops into a sharp depression, such as a pothole, or strikes a hard raised object, such as a curb.

A brief high rate of deceleration can cause the airbag to deploy, even though it would not be needed.

• The airbag is designed to help protect the rider.

It is not designed to help protect a passenger.

• The airbag is not intended to replace a helmet.

Helmets have proven effective in reducing the severity of head injuries in all types of crashes. So always wear a helmet, and make sure a passenger wears one as well. There are several situations in which the vehicle airbag should not deploy. Four of the more common situations are discussed here.

- If a rider is travelling at a moderate speed and has a minor frontal collision, such as running into the rear of a car slowing down ahead, or stopped at a traffic light, the rate of deceleration should be low enough for the rider to either stay on the vehicle or receive less than severe injuries to the head or chest.
- Being struck in the side or rear by another vehicle can result in very serious injuries. But since the sensors are attached to the frame, such a crash cannot be detected by the sensors. Therefore, the airbag should not deploy, and it would not be helpful to the rider even if it did deploy.
- Another situation that should not result in airbag deployment is if the vehicle slides out and goes down on a slippery surface. Again, the crash would not be detected or determined to be a severe frontal impact, and the airbag would not benefit the rider even if it did deploy.

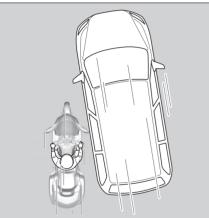
Safety Precautions

Vehicle Safety



#### **Safety Precautions**

• Finally, if the vehicle is involved in a sideswipe with a stationary object, such as a concrete median barrier, or with another vehicle travelling in the same direction, as illustrated here, the airbag should not deploy.



#### Important Safety Precautions

- Do not install or temporarily attach any items, such as a map holder, over the airbag cover or in the area between the rider's seat and the handlebars. This could prevent the airbag from deploying properly, or cause items to be propelled by the airbag and possibly hurt someone.
- Do not tamper with any system components, including the wires or connectors.

Doing so could prevent the airbag system from operating properly or cause unintended airbag deployment and possibly serious injury.

• Do not attempt to remove any airbag components — even temporarily. This could result in unintended airbag deployment and injury.

What you should do: Follow all recommendations in this owner's manual.

Vehicle Safety

16

## **Riding Precautions**

#### **Running-in Period**

During the first 500 km (300 miles) of running, follow these guidelines to ensure your vehicle's future reliability and performance.

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking and rapid down-shifts.
- Ride conservatively.

#### Brakes

Observe the following guidelines:

- Avoid excessively hard braking and downshifting.
  - Sudden braking can reduce the vehicle's stability.
  - Where possible, reduce speed before turning; otherwise you risk sliding out.
- Exercise caution on low traction surfaces.
   The tyres slip more easily on such surfaces and braking distances are longer.
- Avoid continuous braking.
  - Repeated braking, such as when descending long, steep slopes can seriously overheat the brakes, reducing their effectiveness. Use engine braking with intermittent use of the brakes to reduce speed.
- For full braking effectiveness, operate both the front and rear brakes together.

#### Combined ABS

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake system that distributes the braking force between the front and rear brakes. The distribution of the braking force is applied to both front and rear brakes when operating the lever and/or pedal. For full braking effectiveness, operate both the front and rear brakes together.

The brake feel changes according to the selected riding mode. ₽P. 136

This model is also equipped with an Antilock Brake System (ABS) designed to help prevent the brakes from locking up during hard braking.

- ABS does not reduce braking distance. In certain circumstances, ABS may result in a longer stopping distance.
- ABS does not function at speeds below 5 km/h (3 mph).
- The brake lever and pedal may recoil slightly when applying the brakes. This is normal.
- Always use the recommended tyres to ensure correct ABS operation.



Vehicle Safety

#### **Riding Precautions**

**Riding Precautions** 

#### Engine Braking

Engine braking helps slow your vehicle down when you release the throttle. For further slowing action, downshift to a lower gear. Use engine braking with intermittent use of the brakes to reduce speed when descending long, steep slopes.

#### Wet or Rainy Conditions

Road surfaces are slippery when wet, and wet brakes further reduce braking efficiency.

Exercise extra caution when braking in wet conditions.

If the brakes get wet, apply the brakes while riding at low speed to help them dry.

#### **Riding in Bad Weather**

If you decide to ride your vehicle in the rain, fog, or other bad-weather conditions, ride carefully. Wet road surfaces reduce traction, especially in turns, and increase stopping distances when you brake.

If the weather turns bad while you are riding, take extra care and do not use cruise control.

When riding in the rain, we recommend you adjust your windscreen height below eye level, if possible, for better visibility. ▶P. 153

Vehicle Safety

18

#### Parking

- Park on a firm, level surface.
- If you must park on a slight incline or loose surface, park so that the vehicle cannot move or fall over.
- Make sure that high-temperature parts cannot come into contact with flammable materials.
- Do not touch the engine, muffler, brakes and other high-temperature parts until they cool down.
- To reduce the likelihood of theft, always lock the handlebars (2 P. 61) and leave your vehicle while taking the Honda SMART Key with you. Deactivate the Honda SMART Key system if necessary.
   P. 62

Use of an anti-theft device is also recommended.

# Parking with the Side Stand or Centre Stand

- 1. Stop the engine.
- 2. Using the side stand Push the side stand down. Slowly lean the vehicle to the left until its weight rests on the side stand.

#### Using the centre stand GL1800/DA

To lower the centre stand, stand on the left side of the vehicle. Hold the left handle grip and the left grab rail. Press down on the tip of the centre stand with your right foot and, simultaneously, pull up and back.

- 3. Turn the handlebars fully to the left.
   Turning the handlebars to the right reduces stability and may cause the vehicle to fall.
- **4.** Turn the ignition switch to **1** (Lock). ■ P. 61

Then, leave your vehicle while taking the Honda SMART Key with you. Deactivate the Honda SMART Key system if necessary. ➡ P. 62

#### **Refuelling and Fuel Guidelines**

Follow these guidelines to protect the engine, fuel system and catalytic converter:

**Riding Precautions** 

- Use only unleaded petrol.
- Use recommended octane number. Using lower octane petrol will result in decreased engine performance.
- Do not use fuels containing a high concentration of alcohol. ▶P. 249
- Do not use stale or contaminated petrol or an oil/petrol mixture.
- Avoid getting dirt or water in the fuel tank.

# Vehicle Safety

continued 19

**Riding Precautions** 

#### Honda Selectable Torque Control

#### GL1800/DA

When the Honda selectable torque control (Torque Control) detects rear wheel spin during acceleration, the system will limit the amount of torque applied to the rear wheel based on the Torque Control level set according to the selected riding mode.

Torque Control will allow some wheel spin during acceleration at the lower Torque Control levels settings. Select a riding mode that is appropriate for riding conditions. ■ P. 136

Torque Control does not work during deceleration and will not prevent the rear wheel from skidding due to engine braking. Do not close the throttle suddenly, especially when riding on slippery surfaces. Torque Control may not compensate for rough road conditions or rapid throttle operation. Always consider road and weather conditions, as well as your skills and condition, when applying throttle. If your vehicle gets stuck in mud, snow or sand, it may be easier to free it with the Torque Control temporarily switched off. ₽ P. 36

Temporarily turning off Torque Control also may help you maintain control and balance when riding on off-road terrain.

Always use the recommended tyres to ensure correct Torque Control operation.

20

Vehicle Safety

# Accessories & Modifications

We strongly advise that you do not add any accessories that were not specifically designed for your vehicle by Honda or make modifications to your vehicle from its original design. Doing so can make it unsafe.

Modifying your vehicle may also void your warranty and make your vehicle illegal to operate on public roads and highways. Before deciding to install accessories on your vehicle be certain the modification is safe and legal.

# **A**WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Do not pull a trailer with, or attach a sidecar to, your vehicle. Your vehicle was not designed for these attachments, and their use can seriously impair your vehicle's handling.

# Loading

• Carrying extra weight affects your vehicle's handling, braking and stability. Always ride at a safe speed for the load you are carrying.

Accessories & Modifications

- Tie all luggage securely, evenly balanced and close to the centre of the vehicle.
- Do not place objects near the lights or the muffler.

# **A**WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can cause a crash and you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

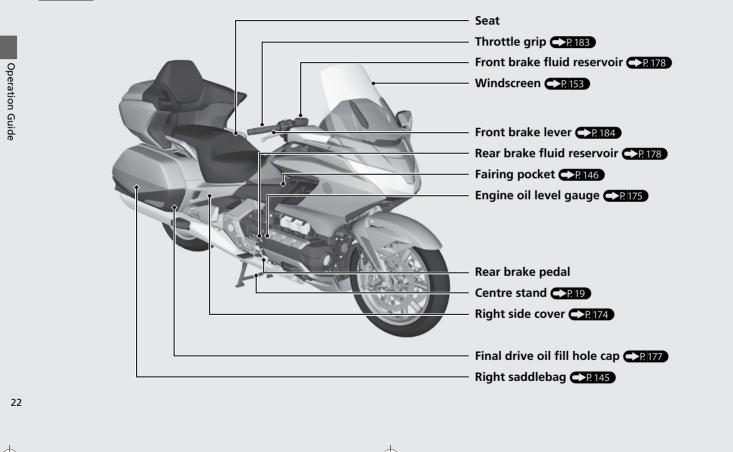
Vehicle Safety

21

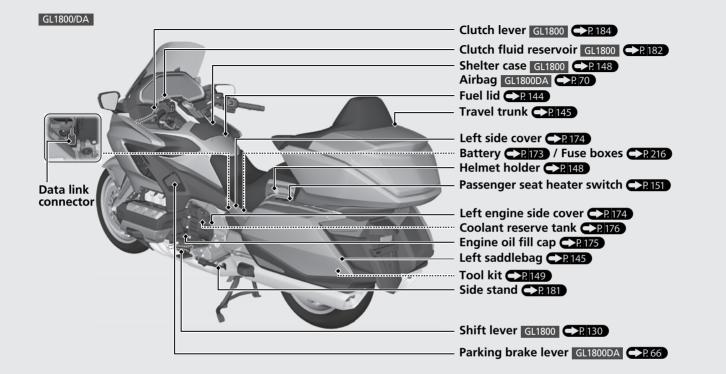
<u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 22 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# **Parts Location**

GL1800/DA



) 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 23 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分



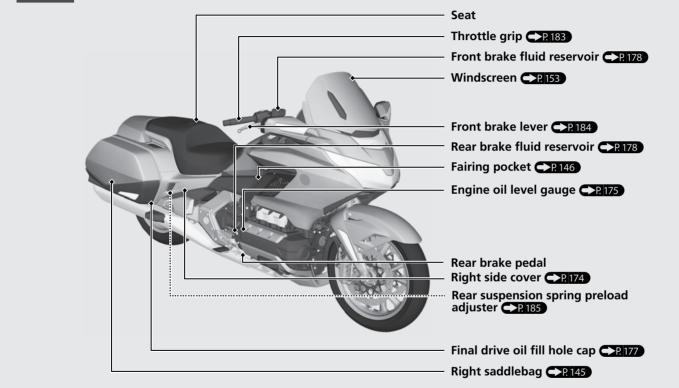
continued 23

**Operation Guide** 

21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 24 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

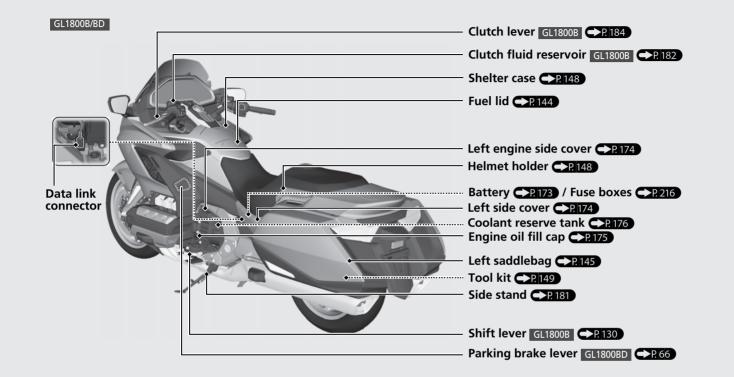


GL1800B/BD



24

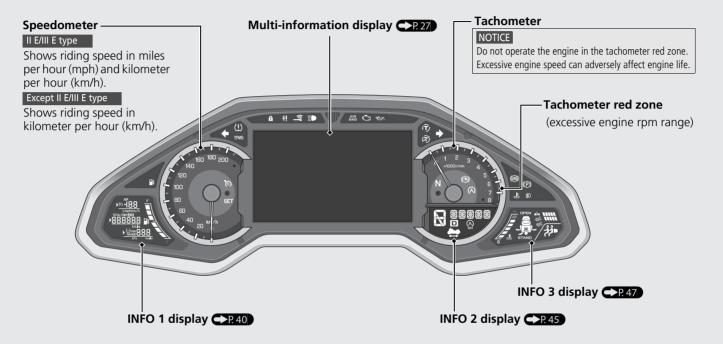
**Operation Guide** 



Operation Guide

25

# Instruments



#### **Display Check**

When the ignition switch is turned [ (On), all of the modes and digital segments will show on the INFO 1, INFO 2 and INFO 3 displays, and the opening symbol will show on the multi-information display.

If the displays do not show when they should, have your dealer check for problems.

26

#### **Multi-information Display**

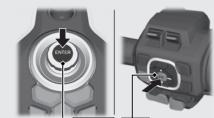
Your vehicle is equipped with a multiinformation display that presents various functions and settings.

• Certain manual functions and settings are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out menu until the vehicle is stopped.

When the ignition switch is turned (On) or ACC, the Notice message appears on the screen for a few second.

Read the Notice message, and then press (Interface dial) on the centre panel or **ENT** switch located at the centre of the 4-way key switch on the left handlebar.





Interface dial (ENTER) ENT switch

#### Home Screen

From this screen, you can go to various functions and setup options.

When the ignition switch is turned | (On) or ACC, you will see the screen you used last.



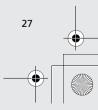
Clock (12-hour display) To set the clock:

# Audio Source

Enters the current audio mode.

Vehicle Setting Enters the vehicle setting menu screen.





**Operation Guide** 

#### Instruments (Continued)

#### Navigation

#### Models equipped with Navigation System

Displays the navigation screen. (Refer to the Navigation System manual.)

# Audio Setting

Enters the audio setting menu screen.



**Operation Guide** 

#### Phone

Enters the phone screen.

#### Apple CarPlay

Appears the menu icon when Apple CarPlay is available. (>P.113)

#### Android Auto™

Appears the menu icon when Android Auto is available.

#### To select a desired setting menu: P.28

#### **Basic Operations**

You can operate and set the various functions of your vehicle using the interface dial and buttons on the centre panel and/or switches on the left handlebar. However, you cannot operate some functions by the centre panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion.

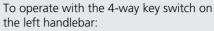
#### To Select a Desired Setting Menu

To operate with the interface dial on the centre panel:

Rotate  $\bigcirc$  (Interface dial) or move  $\bigcirc$  in the eight possible directions to select the available choices.



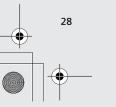
Interface dial



Press ▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ► to select the available choices. Some menus will only use the up and down function.

4-way key switch





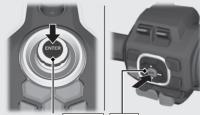
#### ) <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 29 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### To Set Your Selection

To operate with the interface dial on the centre panel: Press 👶 (ENTER)) to set your selection.

To operate with the 4-way key switch on the left handlebar:

Press **ENT** switch located at the centre of the 4-way key switch to set your selection.



Interface dial (ENTER) ENT switch

#### To End the Setting Menu

To return the previous screen:

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Back) button on the centre panel or  $\bigcirc$  (Back) switch on the left handlebar.

To return to the Home screen: Press 👚 (Home) button on the centre panel or 💮 (Home) switch on the left handlebar.





(Home) switch

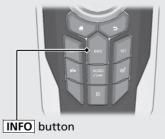
🖌 (Home) button 🛛 🕤 (Back) switch

#### **Information Bar**

Displays various information (current audio source info., vehicle info., help info., or system info.) on the information bar.

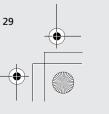


Normally, when you press **INFO** button, the current audio source information or vehicle information is displayed.



continued

**Operation Guide** 



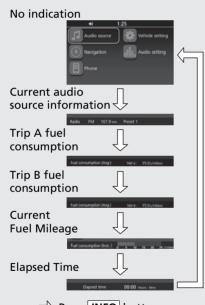
#### Instruments (Continued)

Operation Guide

30

To change the current audio source information or vehicle information, press **INFO** button until the desired information is displayed.

The information bar cycles through the information as follows:



 $\Box$  Press **INFO** button.

In the following cases, the information bar will appear or change from the current indication.

- Helpful information P.32: When your vehicle has helpful information to notify you of.
- System information P.32: When your vehicle has system information to notify you of.

When your vehicle has information to notify you of, only the highest priority information is displayed. Once you close an interrupt information by pressing **INFO** button, it will not be displayed again until the ignition switch is turned **I** (On) again.

#### Vehicle Information Average Fuel Mileage (Trip A/Trip B) [Fuel Consumption (Avg.)]

Displays the average fuel mileage since the individual tripmeter was reset. The average fuel mileage will be calculated based on the mileage of the individual tripmeter.



Display range: 0.1 to 99.9 L/100 km, km/L, MPG (II E/III E type) or mile/L (II E/III E type)

- If less than 0.1 L/100 km, km/L, MPG (II E/III E type) or mile/L (II E/III E type) or more than 99.9 L/100 km, km/L, MPG (II E/III E type) or mile/L (II E/III E type): "----" is displayed.
- When tripmeter A or B is reset: "--.-" is displayed.

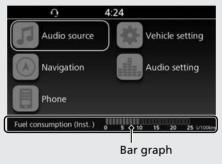
When "--.-" is displayed except for the above-mentioned cases, go to your dealer for service.

To change the unit: To reset the average fuel mileage: R42

# Current Fuel Mileage [Fuel Consumption (Inst.)]

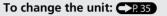
Displays the instantaneous fuel mileage as a bar graph in L/100 km, km/L,

MPG (II E/III E type ) or mile/L (II E/III E type ).



• When your speed is less than 3 km/h (2 mph): The bar graph is not activated.

When the bar graph is not activated except for the above-mentioned cases, go to your dealer for service.



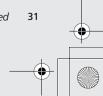
#### Elapsed Time

Displays operating time since the engine was started. (hours : minutes)



• Above 99:59: returns to 00:00.

When the ignition switch is turned O (Off), the elapsed time is reset.



**Operation Guide** 

continued

#### Instruments (Continued)

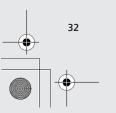
#### I Helpful Information

#### GL1800BD/DA

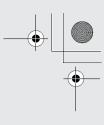
Indication	Explanation	Remedy
₿ + 🛫	Appears when pressing the Walking Speed mode switch without applying the brake.	Before pressing the Walking Speed mode, apply the brake. For more information, refer to "Walking Speed mode."
ା 🖲 + 🛫	Appears when pressing the start button without applying the brake while the transmission is in gear.	Before pressing the start button, put the gear to Neutral (N indicator comes on) or Apply the brake. For more information, refer to "Starting the Engine."

#### System Information

Indication	Explanation	Remedy
	Appears when communication between your vehicle and Honda SMART Key is interrupted after turning on the electrical system.	Refer to "When the Honda SMART Key System Does Not Operate Properly."
	Appears when the battery of Honda SMART Key is weak.	Refer to "Replacing the Honda SMART Key Battery."



**Operation Guide** 



#### Vehicle Setting

You can configure the vehicle settings. The vehicle settings are enabled with the ignition switch in **|** (On). The vehicle settings are disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

Rotate  $\bigcirc$  or press  $\land$  /  $\checkmark$  / $\checkmark$ / $\rightarrowtail$  on the 4-way key switch to select a setting menu. Press  $\bigcirc$  or **ENT** switch to set your selection.



The vehicle settings contain the following:

- [Auto cancel turn signal] P.33
- [Idling stop] GL1800BD/DA P.34
- [Suspension preload] GL1800/DA
   P.34
- [HSTC] GL1800/DA P.36
- [Auto Dimmer Meter Illumination] P. 37
- [Ext. Amp] P.38
- [EQ1/EQ2] (Equalizer) [839]

#### Auto Cancel Turn Signal

You can enable/disable turn signal automatic cancellation.

Q 10:	07
Vehicle	setting
Auto cancel turn signal	
Idling stop	
Suspension preload	
Units	
нятс	

Select [Auto cancel turn signal], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.

2 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. **P**.29

Default: On (selected)

33

**Operation Guide** 

# Idling Stop GL1800BD/DA

You can enable/disable the Idling Stop system.



 Select [Idling stop], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.
 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen</a> or the Home screen. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">Return to the previous screen or the Home screen</a>. <a href="https://www.enable.com">https://www.enable.com</a>.

Default: Off (deselected)

# Suspension Preload GL1800/DA

You can automatically adjust the rear suspension spring preload according to the riding conditions by selecting from the four pre-programmed settings.

The rear suspension spring preload adjustment can be changed only when your vehicle is stopped.



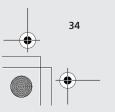
Select [Suspension preload], and then press or ENT switch.
 Rotate or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select the setting according to the riding conditions.

The rear suspension adjustment provides the following settings.

Status icon	<b>Riding condition</b>
į	Rider only (Minimum preload)
<b>i</b> •	Rider and luggage
ä	Rider and passenger
22ª	Rider, passenger and luggage (Maximum preload)

- 3 Press 💩 or ENT switch to set your selection.
  - The selected status icon on the INFO 3 display flashes while transitioning between setting modes.

The status icon comes on when the suspension adjustment is completed.



<u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 35 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分



4 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

Electrical Adjustable Suspension:

# Units

You can change the following units.

- [Fuel consumption] (Only II E/III E type can change to "MPG" or "mile/L".)
- [Distance] ( II E/III E type only)
- [Air pressure] ( GL1800 II E and GL1800DA III E type only)

Units for [Temperature] cannot be changed.

Veh	1:45 icle setting	1
Jnits	icie secting	,
Fuel consumption		L/100km
Distance		km
Temperature		°C
Air pressure		kPa

# To Change the Unit for Fuel Consumption [Fuel consumption]

#### II E/III E type

If you want to select "L/100 km" or "km/L" for fuel consumption, "km" must be selected in the [Distance] menu in advance. When "Mile" for distance is selected, "MPG" or "mile/L" can be selected.

- Select [Units], and then press 🖄 or **ENT** switch.
- With [Fuel consumption] selected, press
  or ENT switch until the desired unit is displayed.

Selectable units: L/100 km, km/L, MPG (II E/III E type) or mile/L (II E/III E type) Default: L/100 km (Except II E/III E type) / MPG (II E/III E type) **Operation Guide** 

35

3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. **●P**.29

The units for average fuel mileage [Fuel consumption (Avg.)] and current fuel mileage [Fuel consumption (Inst.)] are changed in the information bar.

# To Change the Unit for Distance [Distance] || E/||| E type

Select [Units], and then press 🖄 or **ENT** switch.

- 2 Rotate <sup>©</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select [Distance].
- With [Distance] selected, press or
   ENT switch to select the unit.
   In conjunction with the change of the unit for distance, the unit for fuel consumption switches to "MPG" or "L/100km" automatically.

Selectable unit: Mile or km Default: Mile

The units for the cruise control set speed (<sup>\*</sup>S), odometer [TOTAL], tripmeter A/B [TRIP A/B] and available driving distance [RANGE] are changed in the INFO 1 display. In addition, the units for average fuel mileage [Fuel consumption (Avg.)] and current fuel mileage [Fuel consumption (Inst.)] are changed in the information bar.

# To Change the Unit for Tyre Pressure Gauge [Air pressure]

# GL1800 II E and GL1800DA III E type

Select [Units], and then press 🖗 or **ENT** switch.

2 Rotate <sup>©</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select [Air pressure].

3 With [Air pressure] selected, press or ENT switch to select the unit.

Selectable unit: kPa or PSI Default: kPa

4 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ● P.29

The unit for air pressure gauge [Air Pressure] is changed in the INFO 1 display.

## HSTC (Honda Selectable Torque Control) GL1800/DA

You can enable/disable the HSTC function.



 Select [HSTC], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.
 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

Default: On (selected)

Honda Selectable Torque Control (Torque Control): TR 138

36

# Auto Dimmer Meter Illumination

You can select the backlight brightness.

Q 10:07	
Vehicle setting	
Auto dimmer meter illumination	Auto
Day / Night	4
Ext. Amp	C
EQ1	
Head light opening	N

 Select [Auto dimmer meter illumination], and then press or ENT switch.
 Rotate or press / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select [AUTO] (Auto adjustment) or your preferred level.



3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ●P.29

Setting range: Level 1 to 8 or [AUTO] Default: [AUTO]

The display can become dark when the display is very hot. If it does not restore the original brightness, contact your dealer.

## Automatic Brightness Control: P.231

# Day / Night

You can adjust the settings for daytime mode and nighttime mode of the navigation map or applications such as Maps (Apple CarPlay and Android Auto).

Q 10:11	
Vehicle setting	
Auto dimmer meter illumination	Auto
Day / Night	4
Ext. Amp	
EQ1	
Head light opening	

# **Changing of Setting Value**

# When the setting of [Auto dimmer meter illumination] is [Auto]:

If you set to a higher value, the screen will switch to nighttime mode at brighter ambient lighting conditions. If you set to a lower value, the screen will switch to nighttime mode at darker ambient lighting conditions.

37

# When the setting of [Auto dimmer meter illumination] is not [Auto]:

When the setting value of [Day / Night] is higher than the setting value of [Auto dimmer meter illumination], the screen will switch to nighttime mode.

For example, when the setting value of [Auto dimmer meter illumination] is 5, the screen will switch to nighttime mode if [Day / Night] is set to 6 or higher.

# Auto Dimmer Meter Illumination:

#### Holding the Mode

When [Hold day mode] is selected, the screen is always displayed in daytime mode. When [Hold night mode] is selected, the screen is always displayed in nighttime mode.

# Select [Day / Night], and then press or **ENT** switch.

2 Rotate <sup>©</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select [Hold day mode], [Hold night mode] or your preferred level.



Default: Level 4

# Ext. Amp

You can enable/disable audio output when an external amplifier is connected.

If you want to install an external amplifier, contact your dealer.



 Select [Ext. Amp], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.
 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. P.29

Default: Off (deselected)

#### → \_\_\_\_\_GL1800 32MKC830.book 39 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# EQ1/EQ2 (Equalizer)

You can select from two equalizer curves according to the specifications of your vehicle.

- [EQ 1] is an equalizer curve suitable for the front speakers and rear speakers mounted on the travel trunk.
- [EQ 2] is an equalizer curve suitable for the front speakers only or the front speakers and optional rear speakers mounted on the saddlebags.

Q 10:12	
Vehicle setting	
Auto dimmer meter illumination	Auto
Day / Night	4
Ext. Amp	
EQ1	
Head light opening	$\sim$

Select [EQ1] or [EQ2], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch to change the equalizer curve.

## Default:



2 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ← P.29

# Head Light Opening

You can enable/disable the headlight startup lighting when the ignition switch is turned | (On).

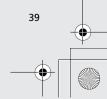
When the setting is enabled, the headlight gradually lights up.



Select [Headlight opening], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.

2 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. **P**.29

Default: Off (deselected)



# **INFO 1 Display**

**Odometer & Tripmeter display** 

Cruise control set speed & Air temperature gauge display



Fuel gauge

GL1800/DA Available driving distance & Tyre pressure gauge display GL1800B/BD Available driving distance display

INFO 1 display contains the following:

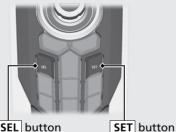
- Cruise control set speed ( 🔊 ) and Air temperature gauge [AIR] display P.41
- Odometer [TOTAL] & Tripmeter [TRIP A/ TRIP B] display P.42

 GL1800/DA Available driving distance [RANGE] & Tyre pressure gauge [ 💮 FR/ RR] display P. 43 GL1800B/BD Available driving distance [RANGE] display P.43

• Fuel gauge P.44

# Changing the INFO 1 Display

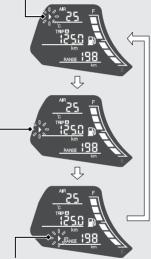
Press SEL button to move the cursor to a desired display.



**SEL** button

# GL1800/DA

**Odometer & Tripmeter display** Cruise control set speed & Air temperature gauge display



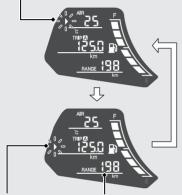
Available driving distance & Tyre pressure gauge display

ightarrow Press SEL button.

**Operation Guide** 

GL1800B/BD

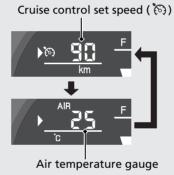
Cruise control set speed & Air temperature gauge display



Odometer & Available driving Tripmeter display distance display □ Press SEL button.

# l Cruise Control Set Speed ( ँञ) & Air temperature Gauge [AIR] Display

To select cruise control set speed or Air temperature gauge, press **SET** button when the cursor is at cruise control set speed and Air temperature gauge display.



Press **SET** button.

- Press SEL button to move the cursor to the cruise control set speed and air temperature gauge display.
   Press SET button to select the cruise
- control set speed or air temperature gauge.

# Cruise Control Set Speed ( 🔊)

The speed set for the cruise control is displayed.

If the cruise control set speed does not memorised, "---" is displayed. **Cruise Control:** (2139)

**Air Temperature Gauge [AIR]** Displays ambient temperature.

# Display range: -10 to 50°C (14 to 122°F)

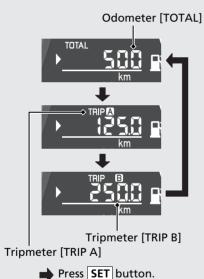
- Below –11°C (13°F): "---" is displayed
- Above 50°C (122°F): 50°C or 122°F flashes

The temperature readout may be incorrect at low speeds due to reflected heat.



# Odometer [TOTAL] & Tripmeter [TRIP A/B] Display

To select Odometer or Tripmeter A or B, press **SET** button when the cursor is at the Odometer and Tripmeter display.



 Press SEL button to move the cursor to the odometer, tripmeter A and tripmeter B display.
 Press SET button to select the

odometer, tripmeter A or tripmeter B.

# Odometer [TOTAL]

Total distance ridden.

When "-----" is displayed, go to your dealer for service.

# Tripmeter A/B [TRIP A/B]

Distance ridden since the tripmeter was reset.

When "------" is displayed, go to your dealer for service.

# To reset the tripmeter: P.42

# To Reset the Tripmeter and Average Fuel Mileage

To reset tripmeter A and average fuel mileage (based on tripmeter A), press and hold the **SET** button while tripmeter A is displayed.



To reset tripmeter B and average fuel mileage (based on tripmeter B), press and hold the **SET** button while tripmeter B is displayed.



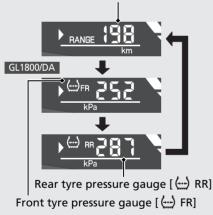
# 

#### GL1800B/BD

Available driving distance is only displayed. GL1800/DA

To select Available driving distance, Tyre pressure gauge FR or RR, press **SET** button when the cursor is at the Available driving distance and Tyre pressure gauge display.

Available driving distance [RANGE]



Press SET button.

Press **SEL** button to move the cursor to the available driving distance and tyre pressure gauge display.

Press SET button to select the available driving distance, front tyre pressure gauge or rear tyre pressure gauge.

# Available Driving Distance [RANGE]

Displays the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel.

The indicated available driving distance is calculated based on the driving conditions, and the indicated figure may not always be the actual available distance.

- Initial display (factory shipped): "---" is displayed until riding for 4 minutes at 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.
- After the second time, when the amount of remaining fuel does not change, the last driving distance is displayed. When the amount of remaining fuel is changed, recalculate and update the available driving distance.
- When the calculated distance is below 5 km (3 mile) or the amount of remaining fuel is below 1.0 litres (0.26 US gal, 0.22 Imp gal): "---" is displayed.

When "---" is displayed except for the above-mentioned cases, go to your dealer for service.

continued 43

# Tyre Pressure Gauge [ - FR/RR]

Displays tyre pressure for the selected tyre. The system does not monitor the tyre pressure at speed below about 25 km/h (16 mph). "---" is displayed until the specified speed is reached.

Display range: 0 to 405 kPa (0 to 59 PSI)

Always use the recommended front/rear tyres to ensure correct the tyre pressure reading.

The indicated tyre pressures may fluctuate when riding because the tyre pressure varies according to the temperature. The tyre pressure shown on the display may be slightly different from the actual tyre pressure as measured by a tyre gauge. If there is a significant difference between the two values, or if the low tyre pressure indicator and TPMS indicator do not go off after you have inflated the tyre to the specified pressure, have the system checked by a dealer.

When "---" is displayed except for the above-mentioned cases, go to your dealer for service.

# Fuel Gauge

Remaining fuel when only 1st (E) segment starts flashing: approximately 3.5 litres (0.92 US gal, 0.77 Imp gal) At the same time, the low fuel indicator comes on.

#### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches the E (1st) segment. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire,

damaging the catalytic converter.

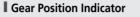


1st (E) segment

If the fuel gauge flashes in a repeat pattern or turns off: **P**195

# **INFO 2 Display**







Gear position indicator

The gear position is shown in the gear position indicator as follows: GL1800BD/DA

Indication	Gear position
1	1st gear
2	2nd gear
Э	3rd gear
щ	4th gear
5	5th gear
6	6th gear
٦	7th gear
N	Neutral
R	Reverse
F	Forward
40000	Shifting failure

- " -- " flashes when the engine stop switch position is changed from () (Run) to (Stop) position with the ignition switch in () (On).
- " " flashes when the ignition switch is turned | (On) with the engine stop switch in the XX (Stop) position.

The indicator may flash if:

- ▶ The front wheel leaves the ground.
- ► You turn the wheel while the vehicle is upright on the stand.

**Operation Guide** 

45

This is normal. To operate the system again, turn the ignition switch to  ${\bf O}$  (Off), and then to  ${\parallel}$  (On) again.

# If " -- " is blinking in the gear position indicator while riding: TR 197

# GL1800/B

**Operation Guide** 

Indication	Gear position
1	1st gear
2	2nd gear
Э	3rd gear
Ч	4th gear
5	5th gear
6	6th gear
Ν	Neutral
R	Reverse
	Shifting failure
"	n the transmission is

" – " flashes when the transmission is not shifted properly.

Riding Mode Indicator Refer to "Riding Mode" (P.136)

D (AT MODE) Indicator ( □ ) GL1800BD/DA Comes on when AT MODE is selected.

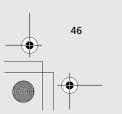
# Idling Stop OFF Indicator ( A )

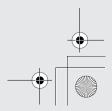
Comes on briefly when the ignition switch is turned (On). Comes on when the Idling Stop system is off.

Walking Speed Mode Indicator ( 🖨 )

Comes on when in Walking Speed mode.

Walking Speed Mode: 
P.133





# **INFO 3 Display**

Travel trunk & Saddlebags open indicator Passenger seat heater indicator

Handle grip heater indicator

Suspension preload indicator Side stand Rider seat heater indicator indicator Coolant temperature gauge

INFO 3 display contains the following:

- Coolant temperature gauge (
   P.47
- Travel trunk GL1800/DA & Saddlebags open indicator P.47
- Side stand indicator P.48
- Handle grip heater indicator (
   IIII)



- GL1800/DA
   Rider seat heater indicator ( ∰1) ◆P.48
- GL1800/DA
  Passenger seat heater indicator (₩/₂)
   C>P.49
- GL1800/DA
   Suspension preload indicator (
   J)
   →
   P.49

# Coolant Temperature Gauge ( 是)

When the coolant is over the specified temperature, the 6th (H) segment flashes and the high coolant temperature indicator comes on.

## 6th (H) segment

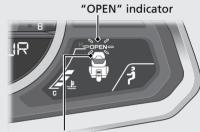


If the 6th (H) segment flashes while riding: TR190 If the all segments flashes: TR196

# Travel Trunk GL1800/DA & Saddlebags Open Indicator

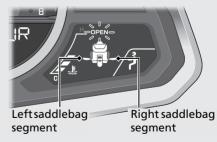
The segment(s) of open component(s) flashes with the "OPEN" indicator when your vehicle's travel trunk and/or saddlebags are open.

### Travel trunk open GL1800/DA



Trunk segment

# Saddlebag open



Operation Guide

#### Side Stand Indicator

The side stand segment flashes with the "STAND" when the side stand is put down. It goes off when the side stand is raised.

#### Side stand segment



"STAND" indicator

# Handle Grip Heater Indicator ()

Comes on when the handle grip heater is on and indicates the selected heater level. The handle grip heater has 5 levels.

#### Handle grip heater indicator ()



When the handle grip heater indicator flashes, go to your dealer for service.

# To operate the handle grip heater:

If the handle grip heater indicator blinks: <a>P.195</a>

# Rider Seat Heater Indicator ( #/1) GL1800/DA

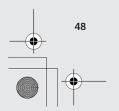
Comes on when the rider seat heater is on and indicates the selected heater level. The rider seat heater has 5 levels.

# Rider seat heater indicator ( #//1)



When the rider seat heater indicator flashes, go to your dealer for service.

To operate the rider seat heater: **P** 151 If the rider seat heater indicator blinks: **P** 196



# Passenger Seat Heater Indicator ( #//2) GL1800/DA

Comes on when the passenger seat heater is on.

Passenger seat heater indicator ( He)



When the passenger seat heater indicator flashes, go to your dealer for service.

To operate the passenger seat heater: To operate the passenger seat heater indicator blinks: TP 196

# Suspension Preload Indicator (حُرُمُ ) GL1800/DA

Shows selected rear suspension spring preload. The indicator flashes while transitioning between setting modes.

When the indicator flashes except for the above mentioned cases, go to your dealer for service.

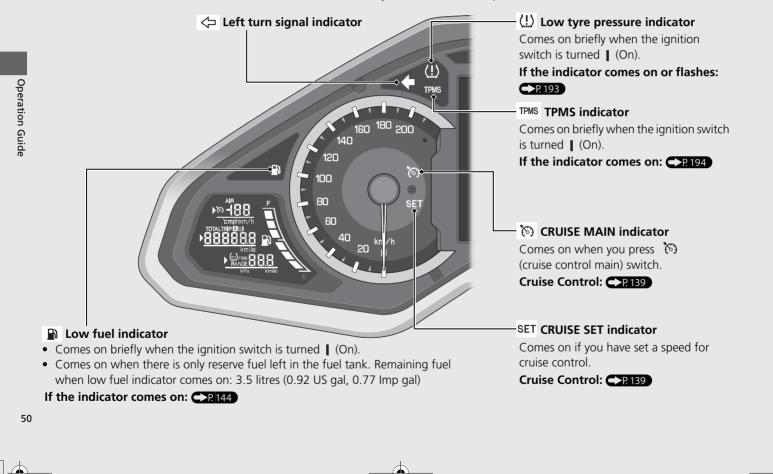
# Electrical Adjustable Suspension:



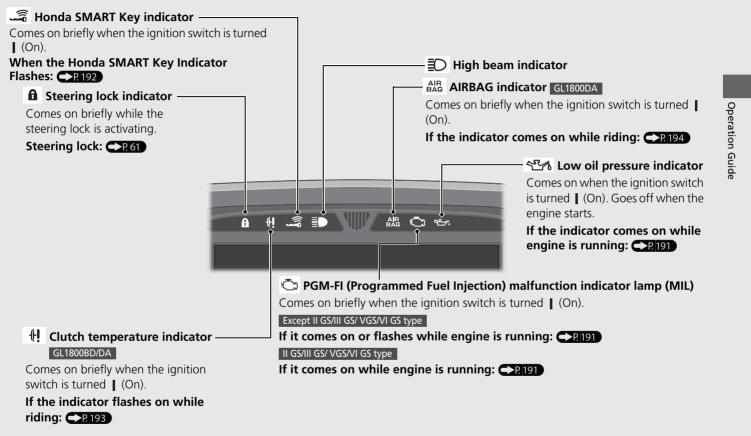
<u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 50 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# Indicators

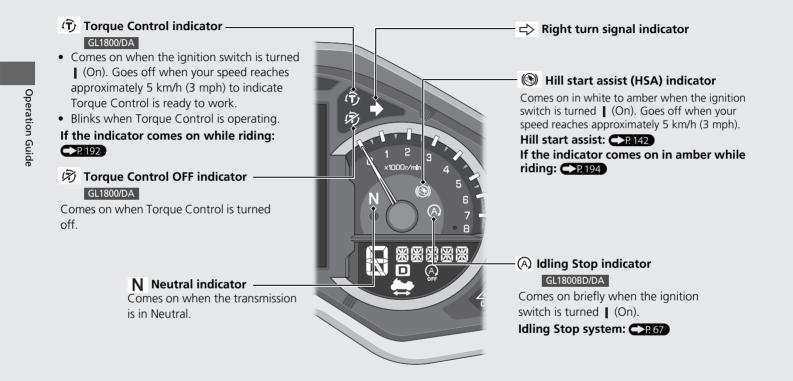
If one of these indicators does not come on when it should, have your dealer check for problems.

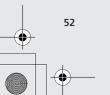


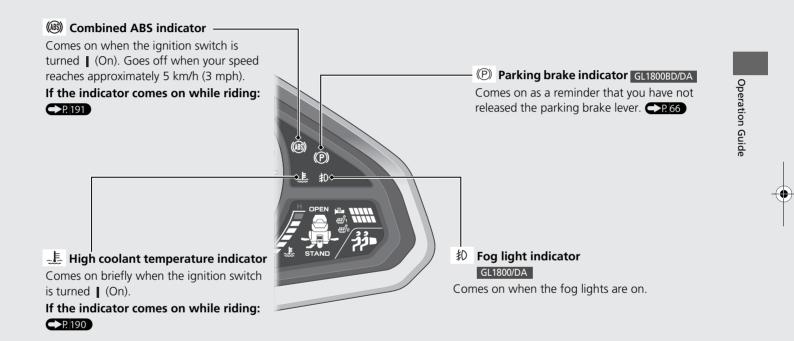
) 21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 51 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分



Indicators (Continued)

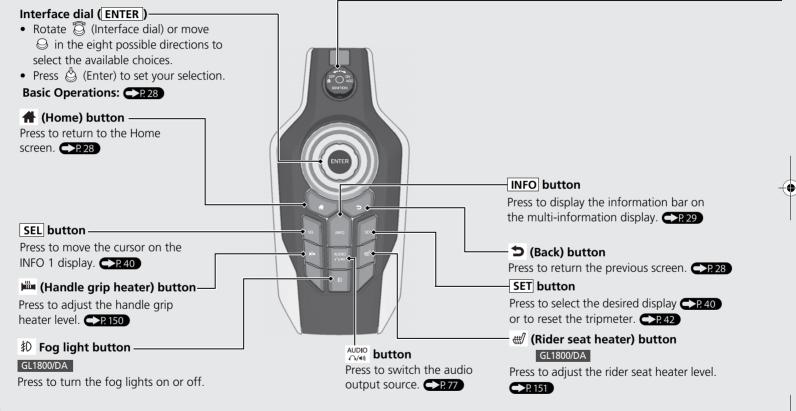






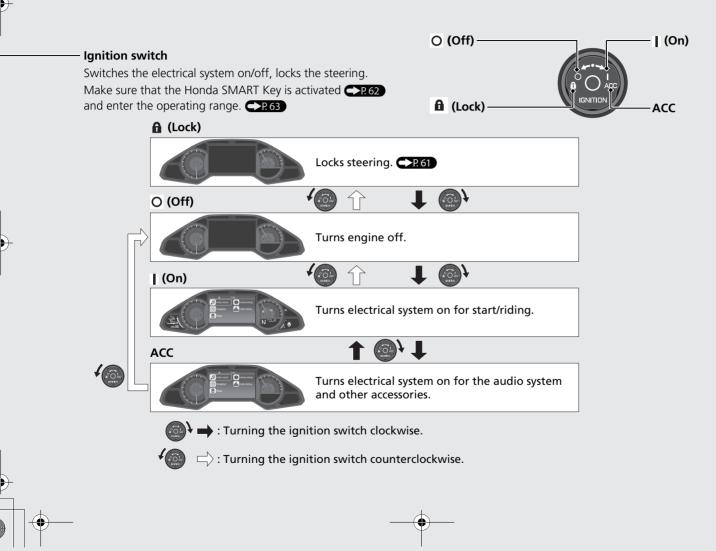
# **Switches**

# **Centre Panel**



54

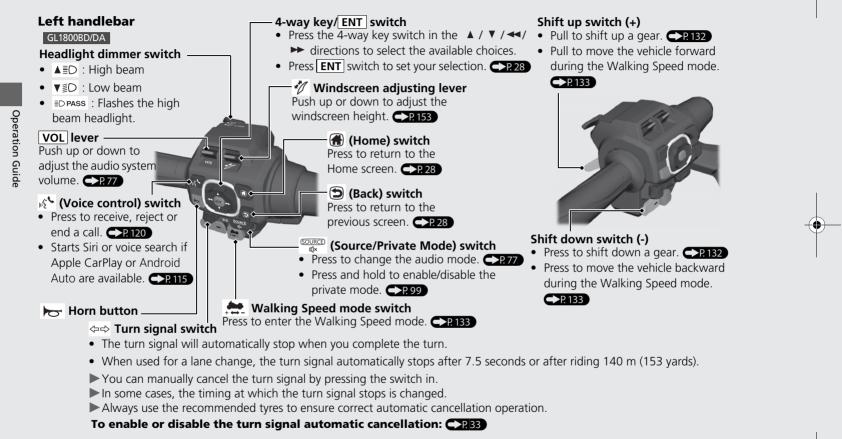
<u>- 21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 55 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分



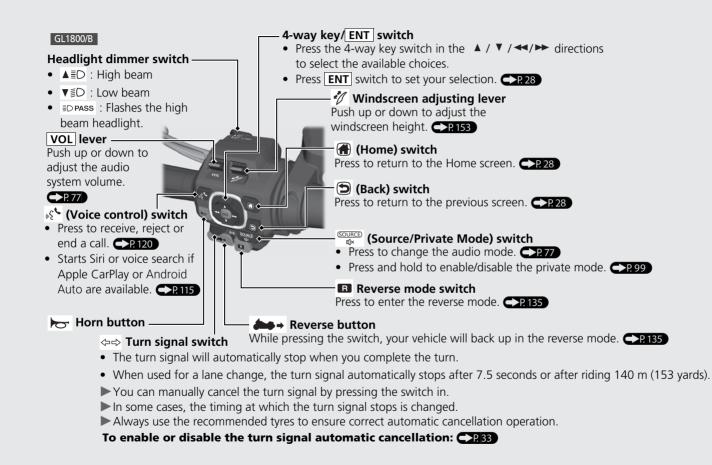
**Operation Guide** 

#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 56 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# Switches (Continued)



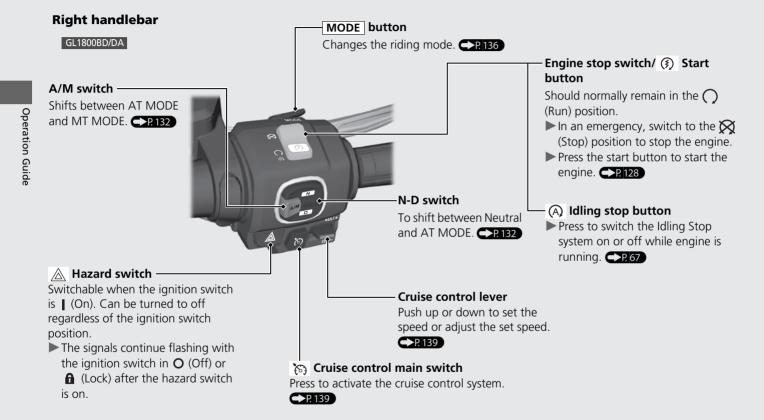
→ 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 57 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分



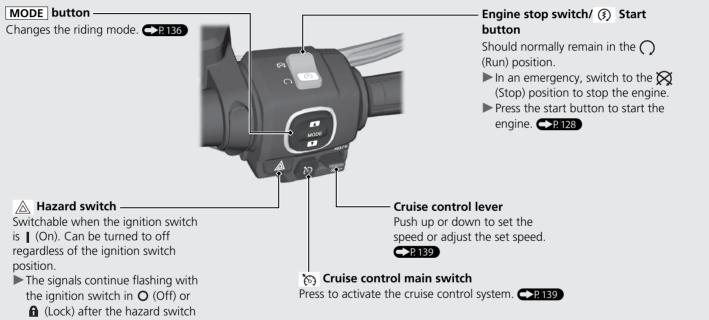
**Operation Guide** 

#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 58 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分





#### GL1800/B



is on.

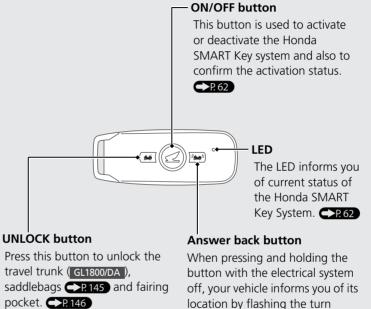
# Switches (Continued)

#### **Passenger seat**



∉ (Passenger seat heater) switch GL1800/DA Turn to adjust the passenger seat heater level. P.152

# Honda SMART Key



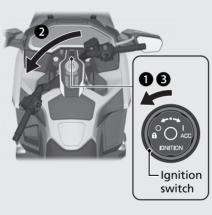
location by flashing the turn signals. P. 65

# **Steering Lock**

Lock the steering when parked to help prevent theft.

A U-shaped wheel lock or similar device is also recommended.

When using a U-shaped wheel lock or similar device, be careful not to damage the wheels.



# Locking

Turn the ignition switch to O (Off).

- 2 Turn the handlebars all the way to the left or right.
- **3** Turn the ignition switch counterclockwise.
  - The steering lock indicator comes on briefly and the steering is automatically locked.
  - If the steering lock indicator blinks and the alarm sounds, the steering has not been locked completely because the steering was not positioned all the way to the left or right.

If this occurs, reposition the handlebars all the way to the left or right, then turn the ignition switch counterclockwise (The steering can also be locked by positioning it all the way to the left or right while the alarm is sounding).



# Unlocking

- (1) Make sure that the Honda SMART Key is activated **PR62** and enter the operating range. **PR63**
- (2) Turn the ignition switch clockwise.

The steering is unlocked automatically.

61 -(

# Honda SMART Key System

The Honda SMART Key system allows you to operate the vehicle.

The system runs a two-way authentication between the vehicle and the Honda SMART Key to verify it is the registered Honda SMART Key.

The Honda SMART Key system uses lowintensity radio waves. It may affect medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker.

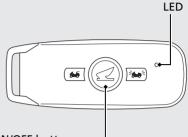
# Activate or Deactivate the Honda SMART Key System

To Switch the Honda SMART Key System to Activation or Deactivation Press and hold the ON/OFF button for more than 1 second.

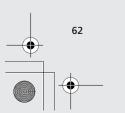
# To Check the Honda SMART Key System Status

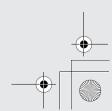
Press the ON/OFF button for less than 1 second. The Honda SMART Key LED will show the status. When the Honda SMART Key LED:

Blinks 3 times: (active)	Honda SMART Key system authentication can be performed.
Lights briefly: (inactive)	Honda SMART Key system authentication
	cannot be performed.



ON/OFF button -----



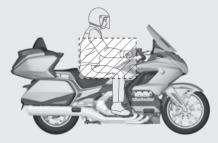


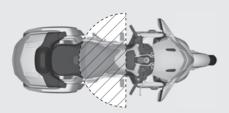
# **Operating Range**

The Honda SMART Key system uses lowintensity radio waves. Therefore, the operating range may be wider or narrower, or the Honda SMART Key system may not work properly in the following situations:

- When the Honda SMART Key battery is low or depleted.
- When there are facilities nearby that generate strong radio waves or noise, such as TV towers, power stations, radio stations, or airports.
- When you carry the Honda SMART Key with a laptop or wireless communication device such as a radio or mobile phone.
- When the Honda SMART Key comes into contact with or is covered by metal objects.

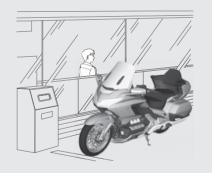
The system can be operated when the Honda SMART Key is within the shaded area shown in the illustration.





Anyone can operate the ignition switch and start the engine if your Honda SMART Key is within operating range of your vehicle, even if you are on the other side of a wall or window. If you will be away from your vehicle but your Honda SMART Key will still be within the system's operating range, deactivate the Honda SMART Key system.

#### Activate or Deactivate the Honda SMART Key System SR62



continued 63



# Honda SMART Key System (Continued)

Anyone in possession of the Honda SMART Key can perform the following operations if the Honda SMART Key is within the system's operating range:

- Unlocking the steering lock P.61
- Activating the electrical system P.64
- Starting the engine 
  P. 128

Operation Guide

64

- Operating the audio system P.73 and other accessories.

You should always keep the Honda SMART Key on your person when you get on and off the vehicle or while riding.

Do not place the Honda SMART Key in the travel trunk (GL1800/DA), saddlebags, shelter case (Except GL1800DA) or fairing pocket.

If the ignition switch is **(**On), the vehicle can be operated even by a person who does not have a verified Honda SMART Key.

Whenever you leave your vehicle, turn the ignition switch to O (Off) and lock the steering.  $\bigcirc$  R61

# **Operating the Ignition Switch** To Activate the Electrical System

- Make sure that the Honda SMART Key is activated and enter the operating range for the vehicle. <</p>
- **2** Turn the ignition switch to | (On).

# P. 55

The electrical system activates and the engine can be started.



# To Turn Off the Electrical System

- 1 Turn the ignition switch to O (Off) or
  - ft (Lock).
  - The windscreen moves to the lowest position automatically.
- 2 Leave the operating range with the Honda SMART Key R63 or switch the Honda SMART Key system to inactive. R62

Always make sure the ignition switch is **O** (Off).

# If the Honda SMART Key System Does Not Work Properly (2200)

# **Answer Back System**

The answer back system is a device to find the location of your vehicle and to inform you that the immobilizer function of the Honda SMART key system is activated. When the immobilizer is active and you press and hold the answer back button on the Honda SMART Key with the ignition switch in  $\bigcirc$  (Off) or  $\bigcirc$  (Lock), the turn signals light, informing you of your vehicle's location.

The answer back system uses low-intensity radio waves. It may affect medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker.

# Answer back button

# Operation

Press and hold the answer back button on the Honda SMART Key.

► The answer back system will not function when the ignition switch is (On).

If the ignition switch is left in **O** (Off) or **1** (Lock) for more than 30 days, the answer back system will no longer operate. When the system is active and the vehicle receives a signal from pressing the answer back button, system activation will be extended for 30 days.

**Operation Guide** 

65

To reset the system, turn the ignition switch (On) once and then O (Off). To turn the ignition switch ON C P55

When the battery in the vehicle is weak, the answer back system may not function.

# Parking Brake Parking Brake Lever

#### GL1800BD/DA

Be sure the parking brake is applied when parked and warming up the engine.

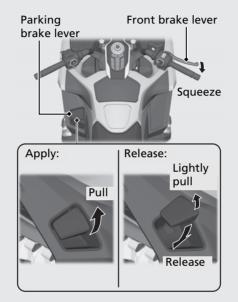
Make sure the parking brake lever is released before riding.

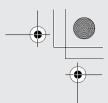
To apply the parking brake: Squeeze the front brake lever and pull the parking brake lever back to lock the rear wheel.

The parking brake lock will not function if the parking brake is not adjusted properly. P.180

To release the parking brake: Release the parking brake lever by lightly pulling in the lever.

Before riding, check that the parking brake indicator is turned off and make sure that the parking brake is fully released so there is not drag on the rear wheel.





Operation Guide

# **Idling Stop System** GL1800BD/DA

The Idling Stop system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and noise by stopping the engine from idling when stopped, such as when waiting at an intersection.

# Switching the Idling Stop System On or Off

Switch the Idling Stop system on or off using the start/Idling Stop button or by the setting menu in the multi-information

display. P.34

Each time the start/Idling Stop button is pressed, the Idling Stop system is switched on or off.

The status of the Idling Stop system (on or off) is maintained when the ignition switch is turned to **O** (Off) and then back to (On).

Start/Idling Stop button



0	10:07	
/	ehicle settin	g
Auto cancel tur	n signal	
Idling stop		
Suspension pre	load 📃	j• jj jj•
Units		
нятс		

Idling Stop indicator



**Operation Guide** 

Idling Stop OFF indicator

- ON: Idling Stop OFF indicator does not come on.
  - ▶ Idling Stop indicator comes on when the Idling Stop system becomes ready to stop the engine while riding. Idling Stop indicator flashes when the engine is stopped by the Idling Stop system.
- OFF: Idling Stop OFF indicator comes on. ► Idling Stop OFF indicator comes on when the Idling Stop system is off.



# Idling Stop System (Continued)

### Activating the Idling Stop System

The Idling Stop system becomes ready to stop the engine and the Idling Stop indicator comes on when the following conditions are satisfied with the Idling Stop system on.

- Engine is sufficiently warmed up
- Vehicle has been ridden at a speed of over 10 km/h (6 mph).

# Idling Stop Indicator Does Not Come On: CR198

# Stopping the engine by the Idling Stop System

The engine stops and the Idling Stop indicator flashes after you close the throttle completely and stop the vehicle while the Idling Stop system is on.

#### **Idling Stop indicator**



- While the engine is stopped by the Idling Stop system, if you press the start/Idling Stop button, the Idling Stop system is deactivated and the engine will restarts.
- The following conditions occurs while the engine is stopped by the Idling Stop system, the engine will be restarted.
  - Hill Start Assist (HSA) is activated.
  - Transmission is shifted in Neutral (N side of the N-D switch is pressed).
  - Vehicle moves at about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more.
  - Battery is discharged more than specified.
- In the following conditions, the engine will not stop by the Idling Stop system.
  - Rider is not sitting astride the vehicle.
  - Transmission is in Neutral (N).
  - Battery is weak or temperature of battery is low.
  - Hill Start Assist (HSA) is operated.

# Safety Precautions for the Idling Stop System

Do not go away from the vehicle while the Idling Stop indicator is flashing. When you go away from the vehicle, always turn the ignition switch to  $\mathbf{O}$  (Off).

While the engine is stopped by the Idling Stop system, do not press against the seat with your hands or body, and do not put a load on the seat other than that of the rider sitting astride the vehicle.

Even if the rider does not get on the vehicle, the engine will restart unexpectedly when the throttle is opened or when the battery becomes weak with a load on the seat.

# Engine is Not Stopped by the Idling Stop System While the Idling Stop Indicator is On:

#### NOTICE

Stopping by the Idling Stop system for a long time may cause battery discharge.

## **Restarting the Engine**

Check that the Idling Stop indicator is flashing, and then open the throttle. The engine will not restart if the rider is not sitting astride the vehicle. When restarting on a slope, release the brakes after you feel the vehicle begin to move.

- If the indicator is not flashing, you cannot restart the engine with the Idling Stop system, even if you open the throttle.
- In the following conditions while the engine is stopped by the Idling Stop system, the Idling Stop indicator changes from flashing to off and you cannot restart the engine, even if you open the throttle.
  - -When the side stand is lowered
  - -When the vehicle has fallen over
  - When the rider has not been sitting astride the vehicle for approx. 3 minutes

To restart the engine when the Idling Stop indicator not flashing, shift the transmission into neutral and press the start/Idling Stop button. (To restart except in Neutral, apply the brake lever firmly, and then press the start/Idling Stop button.)

- The engine starts in the following conditions without opening the throttle grip.
  - When changing the Idling Stop system from on to off
  - When the gear position is changed to Neutral (N)
  - When the vehicle moves by releasing the brakes while stopped on a slope
  - When the battery is weak
  - A few seconds before restarting the engine, the Idling Stop indicator flashes quickly. After restarting, the Idling Stop indicator turns off and the system does not operate until the battery voltage has recovered.
  - See your dealer for checking the battery.
  - When the Hill Start Assist (HSA) system is activated with the brakes applied firmly

## Engine Does Not Start Even If the Throttle is Opened: CR 199

**Operation** Guide

21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 70 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# Airbag System

The Airbag System can help cushion the impact force to the rider's head and upper body in certain severe frontal impacts. For safety precautions, see "Airbag system."

#### How Rider Injuries Occur in a Frontal Crash

Operation Guide

70

"SPEED KILLS," a saying goes. But not all vehicle injuries occur at high speeds, and speed alone does not cause injuries. In fact, the main cause of injuries in a collision is a rapid decrease in speed, caused by the rider impacting an object, such as another vehicle or the ground. As another saying goes, "It's not how fast you go, it's how hard you hit."

Consider, for example, what happens when a vehicle and rider crash into a parked car at 50 km/h (30 mph).  In a 50 km/h (30 mph), head-on crash into the side of a stationary car, the vehicle will come to a stop in about 1/ 10th of a second-nearly as fast as the blink of an eye.

Without an airbag, the rider would continue forward at 50 km/h (30 mph) until he strikes the car or the ground with a force that could cause very serious or fatal injuries.

 In the same situation with an airbagequipped vehicle, the bag would slow the rider's forward movement and absorb some of his kinetic energy.\*

As a result, the rider would impact the car and/or the ground at a lower speed and with less force, and have a better chance of surviving the crash.

\*Kinetic energy (KE) is the energy of motion. For a rider, it's a combination of the rider's mass (m) or weight, and his speed (v).

Mathematically,  $KE = (m \times v2)/2$ . At 50 km/h (30 mph), a rider's kinetic energy is four times greater than at 24 km/h (15 mph). At 72 km/h (45 mph), it would be nine times greater. At 100 km/h (60 mph), it would be sixteen times

greater.

 A crash into a solid barrier at 50 km/h (30 mph) may not seem very serious, but for the rider it would be similar to falling from a third-story building directly onto pavement.

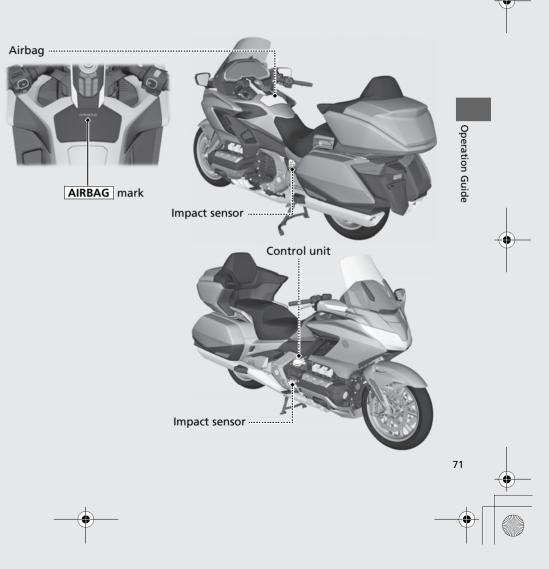
#### **Airbag System Components**

Your vehicle airbag system includes: An airbag that is stored forward of the rider's seat, under a cover marked **AIRBAG**.

The impact sensors that measure the rate of deceleration during a frontal impact are located on the left and right of the main frame under the rider seat.

The control unit evaluates data from the impact sensors and determines whether or not the airbag should deploy.

The system continually monitors information about the sensors, the control unit, and the airbag inflator whenever the ignition is in the | (On).



#### Airbag System (Continued)

#### How The Airbag System Works

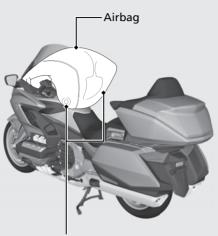
If you ever have a frontal impact, the impact sensors will detect the vehicle's deceleration and send that information to the control unit.

If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will signal the airbag to instantly inflate.

As the rider's head and upper body press into the airbag, the bag immediately begins deflating, through vents located at the bottom of the bag.

The airbag slows down the rider's forward movement and absorbs some of the rider's kinetic energy.

When the rider eventually separates from the vehicle and contacts the opposing object or the ground, the forward speed of the rider and the resulting force of the impact will be much lower than they would be without the airbag.



Vents

#### **Airbag System Service**

Your airbag system is well protected from the elements. There is no need to take any special precautions to protect it from rain, snow, or temperature extremes.

The airbag system is also virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle checked by a Honda dealer if:

- The AIRBAG indicator alerts you to a potential problem with the system. The indicator, located in the instrument panel, should come on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to [ (On). If it does not come on, or it comes on and stays on, or it comes on while you are riding, the airbag may not deploy when you need it.
- The airbag ever inflates. Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Do not try to remove or replace the airbag by yourself. This must be done by a Honda dealer.



21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 73 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio (Except V GS/VI GS type). It can also play USB flash drives and iPod, iPhone, Android<sup>™</sup> phone and *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> devices.

You can operate the audio system from the switches on the left handlebar and buttons on the centre panel. However, you cannot operate some functions by the centre panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion.

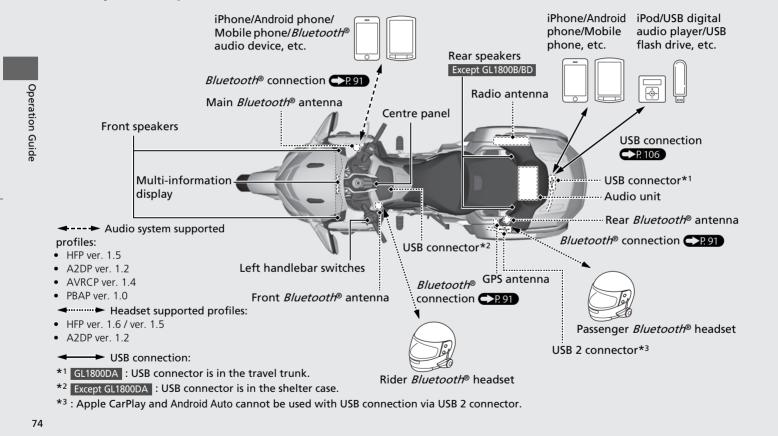
- Local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.
- Only operate audio buttons and switches when safe to do so.
- Set the volume at a level that still allows horns and emergency vehicles to be heard.
- Some audio devices, USB flash drives and Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> audio devices may not be compatible.
- Use any audio devices, USB flash drives and *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> audio devices at your own risk.

- In no event shall Honda be liable for any damages or troubles that occur in the use of audio devices and USB flash drives.
- iPhone, iPad, iPad Air, iPad Mini, iPod, iPod touch, iPod classic, iPod shuffle and iPod nano are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Google™, Android, Google Maps™, Google Play™ and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.
- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motors Co., Ltd., is under license.

**Operation Guide** 

- Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

#### **Audio System Component Locations**



#### **Basic Operations**

You can operate and set the various functions of the audio system using the interface dial and buttons on the centre panel and/or switches on the left handlebar. However, you cannot operate some functions by the centre panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion.

#### **Centre Panel**

[1]  $\bigcirc$  (Interface dial): Rotate  $\bigcirc$  or move  $\bigcirc$  in the eight possible directions to select the available choices. Press  $\bigcirc$  to set your selection.

• Except V GS/VI GS type When listening to the radio

Rotate S or move S: Switches to a higher-frequency.

Rotate O or move O : Switches to a lower-frequency.

Move O and hold: Selects the next station with strong reception.

Move  $\[Pi]$  and hold: Selects the previous station with strong reception.

Move  $\bigcirc$  Selects the next preset radio station.

Move  $\diamondsuit$ : Selects the previous preset radio station.

- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> audio
   Move ⊖⇒: Skips to the next song.
   Move ⇔⊖ : Goes back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- While the vehicle is in motion Rotate S: Adjusts a volume of the current audio mode and navigation mode.

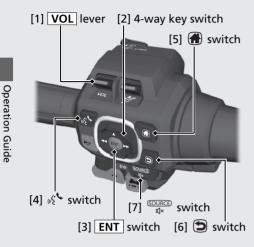
[2]  $\clubsuit$  (Home) button: Select to go to the home screen.

[3] **(**Back) button: Press to go return the previous screen.

[4] **INFO** button: Press to switch the information displayed on the information bar.

[5] AUDIO [5]  $\cap_{A=0}$  button: Press to switch the audio output between the paired *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> headsets and the speakers. Operation Guide

#### Left Handlebar



[1] **VOL** (volume control) lever: Push the lever to adjust the volume.

- To increase the volume: Push the lever up.
- To decrease the volume: Push the lever down.
- To increase the volume rapidly: Push up and hold the lever.
- To decrease the volume rapidly: Push down and hold the lever.

76

[2] 4-way key switch: Press right, left, up or down to select a menu item.

• Except V GS/VI GS type When listening to the radio

Press  $\blacktriangle$  : Switches to a higher-frequency. Press  $\blacktriangledown$  : Switches to a lower-frequency. Press and hold  $\blacktriangle$  : Selects the next station with strong reception.

Press and hold  $\mathbf{V}$ : Selects the previous station with strong reception.

Press  $\blacktriangleright$ : Selects the next preset radio station.

Press ◀: Selects the previous preset radio station.

- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> audio
  - Press ► : Skips to the next song.

Press <-: Goes back to the beginning of the current or previous song.

[3] **ENT** switch: Press to set your selection.

[4] 🔊 (Voice control) switch: Press to receive, reject or end a call. Starts Siri or voice search if Apple CarPlay or Android Auto are available.

[5] (Home) switch: Select to go to the home screen.

[6] (Back) switch: Press to return to the previous screen.

[7]  $\frac{\text{GOURCE}}{\text{d}_{x}}$  (Source/Private Mode) switch: Press to change the audio mode. Cycles through the audio modes as follows:

#### [FM] Except V GS/VI GS type $\rightarrow$

- [AM] Except V GS/VI GS type  $\rightarrow$  [USB] $\rightarrow$ [iPod]
- $\rightarrow$  [Bluetooth]  $\rightarrow$  [AUX] (option)
- When playing an audio Press and hold GOURCE av switch to mute the volume and to pause a track
- When receiving a call Press and hold GOURCE disable the private mode.

#### To Change the Audio Mode

Press  $\frac{\text{GOURCE}}{\text{CP}}$  switch to change the audio mode. Cycles through the audio modes on the information bar as follows:

[FM] Except V GS/VI GS type  $\rightarrow$ 

 $[AM] \xrightarrow{\text{Except V GS/VI GS type}} \rightarrow [USB] \rightarrow [iPod] \rightarrow [Bluetooth] \rightarrow [AUX] (option)$ 



- [FM] Except V GS/VI GS type P. 101
- [AM] Except V GS/VI GS type P. 101

- [AUX]

This function is optional. Contact your dealer for details.

#### To Select the Audio Output Device

You can switch the audio output between the paired *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> headsets and the speakers by pressing  $\frac{\text{AUDIO}}{\text{CO}(40)}$  button on the centre panel.

The selected device is displayed by the audio output status icon on the screen.

- Audio output is from the Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> headsets.
- Audio output is from the speakers.

# Au fio source Vehicle setting Na rigation Audio setting Phone Vehicle setting

Audio output status icon

#### To Adjust the Volume

You can adjust the volume settings for the speakers and headsets separately.

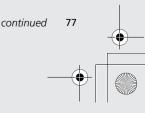
The system has following unique volume levels.

Adjust the volume while in the individual modes.

- [Audio]
- [Phone]
- [Navi] Models equipped with Navigation System
- [Ring tone]
- [Apple CarPlay/Android Auto]
- [Siri/voice search]
- [RDS] II E/III E/II ED/III ED type

Additionally, following modes have the setting menu to adjust each volume level.

- [Audio vol.]
- [Navi vol.]
- [Ring tone vol.]
- [Phone vol.]
- [Smartphone assistant]
- [Smartphone navi]
- [Traffic announcement]



**Operation Guide** 

78

While the vehicle is in motion, you can adjust the volume of the current audio mode by rotating the interface dial.

When you push **VOL** lever up or down, the volume control level appears on the information bar.

<b>4</b> 0)	10:14
Audio source	e Vehicle setting
Navigation	Audio setting
Phone	
Audio Vol.	7 100000000000
	Information bar

VOL lever

To mute the volume: Press and hold  $\frac{\text{SOURCE}}{\text{I} \text{I} \text{K}}$  switch.

A diagonal line appears in the audio output status icon on the screen.

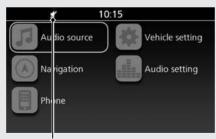
To increase the volume: push **VOL** lever up.

► To increase the volume rapidly, push up and hold **VOL** lever.

To decrease the volume: push **VOL** lever down.

► To decrease the volume rapidly, push down and hold **VOL** lever.

VOLUME level range: Level 0 to 30



Audio output status icon

To resume the volume: Operate **VOL** lever while volume is muted.

#### **Audio Setting**

From this screen, you can go to various setup options for the audio system.

▲砂	1:52	
	Audio setting	
Audio setting	2	
Sound setting		
General setting	J	
Bluetooth setti	ng	
Phone setting		

- [Sound setting] P.79
- [General setting] P.84
- [Bluetooth setting] P.91
- [Phone setting] P.99

#### Sound Setting

You can adjust the sound to fit your preferences.

Rotate  $\bigcirc$  or press  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\checkmark$  on the 4-way key switch to select a setting menu. Press  $\bigcirc$  or **ENT** switch to set your selection.

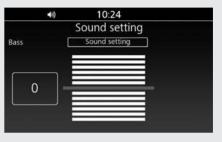
<b>4</b> 0)	1:53		
A	udio setting		
Sound setting			
Bass		0	
Treble		0	
Bass boost			
Fader		0	
Auto volume (Sp	eaker)	OFF	

The sound settings contain the following:

- [Bass boost] P.80
- [Auto volume (Speaker)] P.81
- [Auto volume (Headset)]
- [Navi auto volume (Speaker)]
- [Navi auto volume (Headset)] P.82
- [Volume] P. 82

#### Bass

Adjusts lower-frequency sound level.



- Select [Bass], and then press or ENT switch.
   Rotate or press / ▼ on the 4
  - way key switch to select your preferred level.
- 3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ← P.29

Available setting range: Level -6 to +6 Default: Level 0

The Bass control is automatically adjusted in accordance with the vehicle speed.

79

#### Treble

**Operation Guide** 

Adjusts higher-frequency sound level.



- Select [Treble], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.
- 2 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4way key switch to select your preferred level.

Available setting range: Level -6 to +6 Default: Level 0

The Treble control is automatically adjusted in accordance with the vehicle speed.

#### Bass Boost Enables/disables bass boost



 Select [Bass boost], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.
 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. CR29

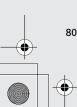
Default: Off (deselected)

#### Fader

Adjusts the front and rear speaker output balance.



- Select [Fader], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.
- 2 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select your preferred level.
  - Positive levels increase front output level and decrease rear output level. If fader level is set to +7, the rear speakers are muted.
  - Negative levels decrease front output level and increase rear output level. If fader level is set to -7, the front speakers are muted.



21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 81 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

► GL1800B/BD On models equipped with the front speakers only, setting the fader level to a negative level

means the output sound gradually becomes smaller.

- The fader setting does not affect the headsets output.
- 3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ● P.29

Available setting range: Level -7 to +7 Default: Level 0

#### Auto Volume (Speaker)

Selects the volume setting to automatically increase volume from the speakers as the speed of the vehicle increases.

<b>(</b> )	1:54	
	Sound setting	
Speaker	Sound setting	
OFF		
LOW		
MID		
HIGH		

Select [Auto volume (Speaker)], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.

- 2 Rotate <sup>©</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch, and then press <sup>©</sup> or ENT switch to set your selection.
- 3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ← P.29

Available settings: [OFF]/[LOW]/[MID]/ [HIGH] Default: [OFF]

#### Auto Volume (Headset)

Selects the volume setting to automatically increase volume from the headsets as the speed of the vehicle increases.

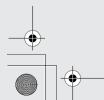
Headset	Sound setting	
OFF	sound setting	
LOW		
нібн		T

Operation Guide

81

 Select [Auto volume (Headset)], and then press or ENT switch.
 Rotate or press ✓ on the 4way key switch, and then press or ENT switch to set your selection.
 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. EP29

Available settings: [OFF]/[LOW]/[HIGH] Default: [OFF]



#### Navi Auto Volume (Speaker)

Selects the volume setting to automatically increase volume of navigation from the speakers as the speed of the vehicle increases.

<b>4</b> 9)	1:54
	Sound setting
Speaker	Sound setting
OFF	
LOW	[
MID	
HIGH	[

 Select [Navi auto volume (Speaker)], and then press or ENT switch.

2 Rotate G or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch, and then press or ENT switch to set your selection.
 3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. R29

Available settings: [OFF]/[LOW]/[MID]/ [HIGH] Default: [OFF]

#### Navi Auto Volume (Headset)

Selects the volume setting to automatically increase volume of navigation from the headsets as the speed of the vehicle increases.

<b>(</b> )	1:54	
	Sound setting	
Headset	Sound setting	
OFF		$\checkmark$
LOW		
HIGH		

- Select [Navi auto volume (Headset)], and then press or ENT switch.
- 2 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch, and then press <sup>(L)</sup> or ENT switch to set your selection.
   3 Return to the previous screen or the

Home screen. P.29

Available settings: [OFF]/[LOW]/[HIGH] Default: [OFF]

#### Volume

Adjusts the volumes in the following modes individually.

- [Audio vol.]
- [Navi vol.]
- [Ring tone vol.]
- [Phone vol.]
- [Smartphone assistant]
- [Smartphone navi]
- [Traffic announcement]

This setting is reflected as each volume of the audio output device (speakers and headsets) at that time. Select the audio output device before settings.

ŋ	0 *	1:04	
		udio setting	
Sour	nd setting		
Aud	lio auto volui	me (Speaker)	OFF
Aud	lio auto volui	me (Headset)	OFF
Nav	i auto volum	e (Speaker)	OFF
Nav	i auto volum	e (Headset)	OFF
Volu	ime		

Operation Guide

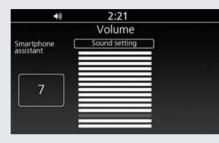
→ <u>1</u> GL1800 32MKC830. book 83 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Select [Volume], and then press 🖄 or **ENT** switch.

2 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select the mode that you want to adjust the volume, and then press <sup>(C)</sup> or **ENT** switch to set your selection.

<ul><li>2:20</li></ul>	
Sound sett	ing
Volume	
Audio vol.	7
Navi vol.	7
Ring tone vol.	7
Phone vol.	7
Smartphone assistant	7

3 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4way key switch to select your preferred level.

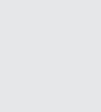


**Operation Guide** 

83

VOLUME level range: Level 0 to 30 Default: Level 7

Each volume can also be adjusted in individual modes.



#### General Setting

Configures system settings. Rotate O, or press  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  on the 4-way key switch to select a setting menu. Press O or **ENT** switch to set your selection.

40	1:54
AUC General setting	lio setting
Веер	
Language	British English
TTS language	British English
Clock	
System information	

The general settings contain the following:

• [Beep] **P**.84

**Operation Guide** 

84

- [Language] P.84
- [TTS language]
   Models equipped with Navigation System
   P.85

- [Apple CarPlay/iPod]
- [System reset] P.88

#### Beep

Enables/disables the beep sound when operating keys.

<b>4</b> 0)	1:54
Auc	dio setting
General setting	
Веер	
Language	British English
TTS language	British English
Clock	
System information	1 1

 Select [Beep], and then press <sup>b</sup> or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.
 ▶You cannot deactivate the beep sound for error or caution messages.
 Return to the previous screen or the

Home screen. P.29

Default: On (selected)

#### Language

Changes the system language.



- **1** Select [Language], and then press or **ENT** switch.
- 2 Rotate S or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select the display language that you want to use on the screen, and then press S or ENT switch to set your selection.

3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ◆ P.29

#### Default:

 [British English]
 II E/III E/II ED/III ED type
 /

 [US English]
 II GS/III GS/IV GS/V GS/VI GS/III SA/III U type
 /

 [Turkish]
 TU/II TU type

#### TTS Language

Models equipped with Navigation System Changes the TTS (text-to-speech) language.

<b>4</b> (1)	12:50	
0	eneral setting	
TTS language	-	
British English		
Svenska		
Español		
Slovenčina		
Română		

Select [TTS language], and then press
 or ENT switch.
 Rotate O or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select the TTS language to use the navigation, and then press O or ENT switch to set

your selection. 3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

Default: [British English]

#### Clock

The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically. You can also adjust the clock manually.

Genera	al setting	
Clock	2	
GPS adjustment		
Time zone	UTC	00:00
DST		Auto

To enable/disable GPS adjustment function:
 With [GPS adjustment] selected, press
 ♂ or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.

2 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. **R**29

Default: On (selected)

To adjust the clock manually:



Select [Manual setting], and then press
 or ENT switch.
 The month section is selected. Rotate

**Operation Guide** 

- ③ or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch until the desired month is displayed. Move ⊖⇒ or press ➤ on the 4-way key switch to set the month. The selection move to the day section.
- 3 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch until the desired day is displayed. Move <sup>(C)</sup> or press <sup>(C)</sup> on the 4-way key switch to set the day. The selection move to the year section.
- ④ Rotate S or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch until the desired year is displayed. Move S or press ➤ on the 4-way key switch to set the year. The selection move to the hour section.

#### Audio System (Continued)

- S Rotate S or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch until the desired hour is displayed. Move S or press ➤ on the 4-way key switch to set the hour. The selection move to the minute section.
- 6 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch until the desired minute is displayed. Move ⊖⇒ or press ►> on the 4-way key switch to set the minute.
  7 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. **●** P29

**Operation Guide** 

86

Quick setting: Move  $\bigcirc$  /  $\bigcirc$  and hold, or press and hold  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  on the 4-way key switch until the desired number appears.

The clock setting is 24-hour indication, but the clock display is 12-hour indication. The call history is 24-hours indication.

The clock will be reset to 12:00 when the battery is reconnected.

#### Time Zone

Selects the offset of local time from UTC (Coordinated Universal Time). This function is disabled when [Manual setting] is selected.

In the following situations, [Auto] setting will be disabled.

- When your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation System.
- When you are in an area outside the range of the navigation map.
- When no GPS Signal such as in tunnel.

Gei	neral setting	
Clock	153	,
GPS adjustment		$\sim$
Time zone	UTC	00:00
DST		Auto

Select [Time zone], and then press 🖑 or **ENT** switch.

2 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4way key switch to select the time zone, and then press <sup>(C)</sup> or ENT switch to set your selection. **Setting range:** [Auto] or [UTC-12:00] to [UTC +13:00]

3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ● P.29



#### DST

Sets the DST (Daylight Saving Time). This function is disabled when [Manual setting] is selected.

In the following situations, [Auto] setting will be disabled.

- When your vehicle is not equipped with Navigation System.
- When you are in an area outside the range of the navigation map.
- When no GPS Signal such as in tunnel.

Ge	eneral setting	
Clock	~	
GPS adjustment		$\sim$
Time zone	UTC	00:00
DST		Auto

- **1** Select [DST], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.
- 2 Rotate <sup>(C)</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to select [Auto], ON (enable) or OFF (disable), and then press <sup>(C)</sup> or ENT switch to set your selection.
- **3** Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. **P**29

#### **System Information**

Shows various information of the audio system.



Operation Guide

- **1** Select [System information], and then press 🔮 or **ENT** switch.
- **2** The following information is displayed.
  - Software version
  - •Hardware version
  - •GPS reception status
  - •OSS Regulated Information
- 3 Return to the previous screen or the
  - Home screen. P.29

#### Apple CarPlay/iPod

Selects whether Apple CarPlay connection or iPod (USB) connection is used when connecting your iPhone to the system with a USB cable.

To change the connection setting, disconnect the USB cable from your iPhone once, change the setting menu, and then connect the USB cable to your iPhone again.

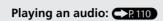
<b>(</b> 1)	1:54	
,	Audio setting	
General setting		
Clock		
System informa	tion	
Apple CarPlay		
System reset		
Restore Apple 0	CarPlay settings	

● Select [Apple CarPlay] or [iPod], and then press ④ or ENT switch to change the connection.

#### Default: [Apple CarPlay]

2 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ← P.29

Apple CarPlay: P.113



#### System Reset

Resets the audio system to the factory defaults. All settings including preset data will be reset default values.

 (1)	1:54
	Audio setting
General setting	
Clock	
System informa	ation
Apple CarPlay	
System reset	
Restore Apple	CarPlay settings

Select [System reset], and then press
 or ENT switch.
 A confirmation message appears on

the screen.

88

#### → <u>GL1800 32MKC830.book</u> 89 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### Select [YES] to reset the settings. After selecting [YES], the system will

reboot.



#### **Restore Apple CarPlay Settings**

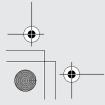
Resets your selection on the Apple CarPlay disclaimer screen.

<b>4</b> 9)	1:54	
4	Audio settir	ng
General setting		25. 
Clock		
System informa	tion	
Apple CarPlay	—	
System reset		1
Restore Apple C	arPlay setting	<u>15</u>

- Select [Restore Apple CarPlay settings], and then press or ENT switch.
   A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- 2 Select [YES] to reset your Apple CarPlay setting.



#### 3 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ← R 29



<u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 90 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Audio System (Continued)

#### Restore Android Auto Settings

Resets your selection on the Android Auto disclaimer screen.

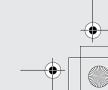
2	·	1:05	
Gene	ہے ral setting	udio setting	
Syste	em informat	lion	
App	le CarPlay		
Syste	em reset		
Rest	ore Apple C	arPlay settings	
Rest	ore Android	Auto settings	

2 Select [YES] to reset your Android Auto setting.



#### Android Auto: P. 116





#### Bluetooth Setting

You can connect with your iPhone, Android phone or other mobile phone and/or *Bluetooth®* headsets via *Bluetooth®*. Your vehicle can establish up to 3 *Bluetooth®* connections at the same time. Available devices are as follows:

- [Phone pairing] (For iPhone, Android phone or mobile phone) P.92
- [Rider HS pairing] (For rider headset)
   P.97
- [Passenger HS pairing] (For passenger headset)

<0)	1:52	
,	Audio setting	
Audio setting		
Sound setting		
General setting	2	
Bluetooth settin	ng	
Phone setting		_

#### Supported Bluetooth® version/profiles

Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> version	Bluetooth 2.1 + EDR
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> profiles	HFP (Hand Free Profile) ver. 1.5
(For iPhone, Android	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) ver. 1.2
phone, mobile	AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) ver. 1.4
phone or <i>Bluetooth</i> ® device)	PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) ver. 1.0
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> profiles	HFP (Hand Free Profile) ver. 1.6 (recommendation) / ver. 1.5
(For rider and passenger headsets)	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) ver. 1.2

- You cannot pair an iPhone/Android phone/mobile phone/*Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> device while the vehicle is moving. When pairing, park your vehicle in a safe place.
- Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> connection cannot be established while launching Apple CarPlay.
- Your vehicle is not equipped with intercom function. If you want to use intercom function, use the intercom function of your headset.
- Some local governments prohibit the use of a headset by the operator of a motor vehicle. Always obey applicable laws and regulations.





#### **Phone Pairing**

You can establish a *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> connection in two ways.

- [From phone]: Search from the device.
- [Inquiry]: Search from the system.

This function is disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

4	Audio setting	
Bluetooth settin		
Phone pairing		OFF
Rider HS pairing	)	OFF
Passenger HS p	airing	OFF

Enable the *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> function on your device.

For details, refer to the instruction manual of your device.

2 Select [Bluetooth setting], and then press 🖄 or **ENT** switch.

Select [Phone pairing], and then press or ENT switch to enter the setting menu.

#### [From phone]

<b>(</b> )	1:58
	letooth setting
Phone pairing	8193) -
Phone pairing	$\checkmark$
From phone	
Inquiry	
System name:	Honda Goldwing

Select [From phone], and then press or ENT switch.

The system waits for a response from a target device for 2 minutes.

	1:58 Bluetooth setting	
hone	blactooth betting	٦
Phon	Please search from phone.	
From	Waiting timer	
Inqui	1:58	
svste	Abort	/ina

• Tap "Honda Goldwing (default name)" on the *Bluetooth®* setting menu of the target device.

## 6 When a request message appears on the target device, tap "Pair."

⑦ The device name and PIN code appear on the screen. Select [Pair], and then press ☺ or ENT switch.



- 8 When the pairing is complete, a message to inform you that pairing was successful appears on the screen. Press
   ♦ or ENT switch.
- (Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> icon) and I (device icon) appear on the upper part of the screen, and icons of available functions appear next to the name of the device and turn on in light blue.

💟 : Phone

- 🗾 : Music

92

#### [Inquiry]

<b>(</b> )	1:58
Blu	etooth setting
Phone pairing	3
Phone pairing	$\checkmark$
From phone	
Inquiry	
System name:	Honda Goldwing

Select [Inquiry], and then press or
 ENT switch.
 The system searches for a target device.

	•) 11:42	
	Bluetooth setting	g
Phone	Searching phone	
Phone		
Crown	Please wait	
From		
Inquir	Abort	
Syster	Constant of the second s	ling
1990		E C

- S The names of the devices detected are displayed on the background screen. Press or ENT switch to exit the search mode.
  - ►If many Bluetooth® devices are detected, the target device may be detected under the list, so exit the search screen and scroll down the list.
- 6 Select a target device name, and then press 🔮 or **ENT** switch.

(Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> icon) and I (device icon) appear on the upper part of the screen, and icons of available functions appear next to the name of the device and turn on in light blue.

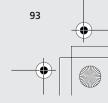
💟 : Phone

🎵 : Music

10 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

<b>4</b> 0)	1:58	
Blue Phone pairing	tooth setting	
From phone		*
Inquiry		
System name:	Honda Goldwing	
NORDA-RC		
NOTE I PC		

- When a request message appears on the target device, tap "Pair."
- When the pairing is complete, a message to inform you that pairing was successful appears on the screen. Press
   or ENT switch.



#### To Connect the Paired Device Manually lcon status:

(light blue) : phone function connected
 : phone function unconnected
 (light blue) : music function connected

🗾 : music function unconnected

<b>4</b> 0)	1:58	
	etooth setting	
Phone pairing	878	
Phone pairing	2	
From phone		
Inquiry		
System name:	Honda Goldwii	ng
MANCH RUTUR		

- Select [Bluetooth setting], and then press 🖑 or **ENT** switch.
- Select [Phone pairing], [Rider HS pairing] or [Passenger HS pairing], and then press or ENT switch to enter the setting menu.
- 3 Select the device you want to connect, and then press ☺ or ENT switch.
- When the connection is established, a message to inform you that pairing was successful appears on the screen. Press
   or ENT switch.

- (5) Status (Bluetooth® icon) and (device icon) appear on the upper part of the screen, and icons of available functions appear next to the name of the device and turn on in light blue.
  - The battery status of the device icon is displayed only when Phone connection is established.

#### To Reconnect a Paired Device Automatically

When the ignition switch is turned (On) or ACC, the system reconnects with registered device automatically.

- If the system finds multiple paired devices, the system will reconnect with the device that was connected last.
- After reconnecting, the song that was last played will be played automatically.

94

#### To Delete the Paired Device

Select [Bluetooth setting], and then press 🔮 or **ENT** switch.

- Select [Phone pairing], [Rider HS pairing] or [Passenger HS pairing], and then press or ENT switch to enter the setting menu.
- 3 Select the paired device, and then press or **ENT** switch.

④ Select [Delete pairing], and then press
 ☆ or ENT switch.

	<b>4</b> 0)	5:33	
	I	Phone pairing	
	Connect as pho	one	j
	Connect as mu	sic	
ſ	Delete pairing		
ĺ	Delete pairing		

S A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select [YES], and then press or ENT switch.



6 St (Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> icon) disappears from the screen.

**Operation Guide** 

#### To Connect/Disconnect Available Functions Individually

Depending on the connected device, this function may not be able to establish a connection.

	1:49
Blueto Phone pairing	oth setting
Phone pairing	$\checkmark$
From phone	
Inquiry	
System name:	Honda Goldwing
MANCER, PUN AD	

- Select [Bluetooth setting], and then press 🖑 or **ENT** switch.
- Select [Phone pairing], [Rider HS pairing] or [Passenger HS pairing], and then press or ENT switch to enter the setting menu.
- 3 Select the paired device, and then press or **ENT** switch.

#### To connect functions:

**4** [Phone pairing]

Select [Connect as phone] or [Connect as music], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.



[Rider HS pairing] / [Passenger HS pairing] Select [Connect], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.



S lcon of selected function next to the name of the device turns on.

#### To disconnect functions:

- **4** [Phone pairing]
  - Select [Disconnect as phone] or [Disconnect as music], and then press or **ENT** switch.

ÎNELE	nect as ph	1000	
	nect as m		
		usic	
Delete	pairing		

[Rider HS pairing] / [Passenger HS pairing] Select [Disconnect], and then press or **ENT** switch.



**5** Icon of selected function next to the name of the device turns off.



96

#### **Rider HS Pairing/Passenger HS Pairing**

This function is disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

Audio settir Bluetooth setting	ng
Phone pairing	OFF
Rider HS pairing	OFF
Passenger HS pairing	OFF

Enable the *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> function on your device.

For details, refer to the instruction manual of your device.

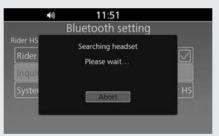
2 Select [Bluetooth setting], and then press 🖄 or **ENT** switch.

3 Select [Rider HS pairing] or [Passenger HS pairing], and then press <sup>(∆)</sup> or **ENT** switch to enter the setting menu.

④ Select [Inquiry], and then press ☺ or ENT switch.



The system searches for a target device.



The names of the devices detected are displayed on the background screen. Press or ENT switch to exit the search mode.

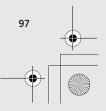
6 Select a target device name, and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.

Bluete Rider HS pairing	ooth setting
Rider HS pairing	
Inquiry	
System name:	Honda Rider HS

Operation Guide

When the pairing is complete, a message to inform you that pairing was successful appears on the screen. Depending on the connection, the following icon appears on the upper part of the screen, and icons of available functions appear next to the name of the device and turn on in light blue.
 / ①: when pairing rider headset
 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

To connect/disconnect the headset:



#### <u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 98 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Audio System (Continued)

#### To Edit the System Name

You can edit the system name to be displayed on a target device.

<b>4</b> 0)	1:58
Blue	tooth setting
Phone pairing	5
Phone pairing	$\checkmark$
From phone	
Inquiry	
System name:	Honda Goldwing

● Select [System name:], and then press or ENT switch.

2 The edit screen appears. Delete the current name, and then enter the new name.

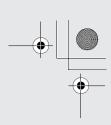


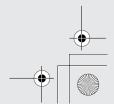
98

**Operation Guide** 

**System default name:** Honda Goldwing **Headset default name:** Honda Rider HS / Honda Passenger HS

**3** Select [OK], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.





#### Phone Setting

You can configure the phone settings. Rotate O or press  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\blacktriangledown$  on the 4-way key switch to select a setting menu item. Press O or **ENT** switch to set your selection.

			udio setting	
Pho	one setti	ng	1.455	
Pri	vate mo	de		$\sim$
Ph	onebool	k dow	nload	
Mi	c. level			

The phone settings contain the following:

- [Private mode] P.99

#### **Private Mode**

Enables/disables a call with the passenger's headset.

- Select [Private mode], and then press
   or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.
- 2 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

#### Default: On (selected)

This setting can also be configured by pressing and holding  $\frac{\text{GOURCE}}{\text{I} \neq \text{v}}$  switch on the left handlebar during a call.

#### **Phonebook Download**

Enables/disables automatic import of your phonebook and call history when your phone is paired.

Up to 1,000 phonebook entries can be stored.

For each person, you can store up to 4 numbers (home, office, cell phone and other) in the phonebook.

Phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

#### 12:04 Phone setting Phonebook download



 $\checkmark$ 

**Operation Guide** 

2 Rotate <sup>O</sup> or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4way key switch to select [Auto] or [Manual], and then press <sup>O</sup> or ENT switch.

**3** Return to the previous screen or the Home screen.

Default: Auto

Auto



#### Mic. Level

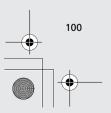
۲

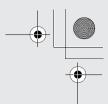
**Operation Guide** 

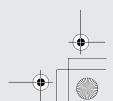
Adjusts the microphone volume.

<b>M</b> 0		*1	12:04	
Mic.	level	Ph	none setting	
	0			
	<u> </u>	E		
	loct [N	lic lo	well and the	en press 🗳 or
E	NT SW	itch.		_
				▼ on the 4-
Wa lev		switc	h to select y	our preferred
	<b>c</b>	o the	previous sci	reen or the
-			► P. 29	

Available setting range: Level -7 to +7 Default: Level 0

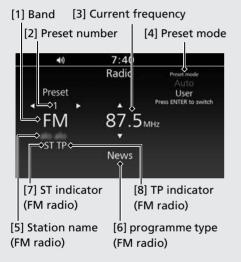






#### Playing the FM/AM Radio Except V GS/VI GS type

The audio system features FM/AM radio. Press  $\frac{\text{GOURCE}}{\text{CP}}$  (Source/Private Mode) switch to select to FM/AM radio.



#### **Screen Information**

[1] Band[2] Preset number[3] Current frequency[4] Preset mode ([User Preset]/[Auto Preset])

# [5] Station name II E/III E/II ED/III ED type

[7] ST (stereo) indicator

•Reception of a stereo signal is indicated when the ST indicator appears in the display. (Stereo reception is available only for FM stereo broadcasts.)

As FM stereo reception becomes weaker, special circuits in the radio gradually blend the sound toward mono to maintain some sound quality, even though the ST indicator remains on.

[8] TP (traffic programme) indicator

II E/III E/II ED/III ED type P. 104

#### Select Station

You can tune the radio frequency one step at a time.

The FM frequency moves in 100 kHz steps. The AM frequency moves in 9 kHz steps.

To go up in frequency, rotate O, move O or press  $\blacktriangle$  on the 4-way key switch. To go down in frequency, rotate O, move O or press  $\blacktriangledown$  on the 4-way key switch. Seek Mode:

Start the auto seek: when you move  $\bigcirc$  /  $\bigcirc$ and hold or press and hold  $\blacktriangle$  /  $\checkmark$  on the 4way key switch for more than 1 second and less than 1.5 seconds, the auto seek starts. The audio system will seek until a broadcasting station with a strong signal is detected. Stop the auto seek: when you move  $\bigcirc$  /  $\bigcirc$  and hold or press and hold  $\checkmark$  /  $\checkmark$  on the 4-way key switch for more than 1.5 seconds during the auto seeking, a beep sounds once and return to the manual tuning. The tuning stops at the frequency when the switch is released.

If the beep setting is disabled, no beep sounds.

To enable the beep sound: P.84

# **Operation Guide**

#### Preset Stations

#### To Store a Station Manually:

You can store the frequencies of your favourite radio stations.

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations in user preset mode.

Press 🖑 or **ENT** switch to select [User] preset mode.

2 Tune in to a station you want to store.
3 Press and hold <sup>b</sup> or ENT switch.
4 Move ↔ / <sup>b</sup> or press *I*/*I* on the 4-way key switch to to select a preset number (1 to 12).

**5** Press and hold 🖄 or **ENT** switch.

#### To Store a Station Automatically:

If you are travelling far from home and can no longer receive the stations you preset, you can use the auto select function to find stations in the local area.

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations in auto preset mode.

Press 💩 or **ENT** switch to select [Auto] preset mode.

2 Press and hold 🖄 or **ENT** switch. The audio system will seek and store

stations with strong signal automatically.

► To cancel the scan, select [Abort].

- If you are in a remote area, the auto select function may not find 12 stations.
- If no available station is detected at all, the stored preset stations are kept.
- ► If even one station is detected, all the preset stations are overwritten.

#### To Select a Preset Station:

Move ↔ / → or press 
 / → or press 
 / → on the 4-way key switch to select a preset station.

**2** Press and hold 🖄 or **ENT** switch.

#### Radio Data System (RDS) II E/II E/II ED/III ED type

The Radio Data System (RDS) provides clear reception on each band and allows you to easily select your favourite stations. In some countries, you can also utilize many convenient features provided by the Radio Data System (RDS).

#### Alternative Frequency (AF)

When the AF function is activated, the system will automatically keep selecting the frequency with the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the same programmes. This can save you the trouble of re-tuning to obtain the same station as long as you are in the same RDS network area.



#### To enable/disable the AF function:

 Press COURCE (Source/Private Mode) switch to select to FM radio. P.77
 Press and hold A (Home) button/ (Home) switch to display the RDS setting menu.

<b>4</b> 0)	12:11	
	Radio	
Alternative fre	equency	
I raffic annou	ncement	
Regionalisatio	'n	

Select [Alternative Frequency], and then press or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.

#### Default: On (selected)

4 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ● R29

#### Regionalisation

When you are travelling into different radio reception areas, if you enable the regional function, the system automatically re-tunes to another local radio station with a stronger signal.

### To enable/disable the regionalisation function:

1 Press  $\frac{\text{SOURCE}}{\text{dx}}$  (Source/Private Mode) switch to select to FM radio.

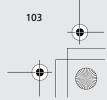
Press and hold (Home) button/ (Home) switch to display the RDS setting menu.

	<b>4</b> 0)	12:11	
		Radio	
[	Alternative free	luency	
Į	Traffic announ	cement	
	Regionalisation		
0			

**On (selected):** the system automatically re-tunes to a stronger signal if reception levels drop. **Off (deselected):** the system only keeps the current reception areas even if reception levels drop.

#### Default: On (selected)

4 Return to the previous screen or the Home screen. ● P.29



Traffic Announcement (TA)

# Image: wide of the second se

When a radio station capable of providing traffic information is selected, the "TP" indicator will appear on the screen that traffic reports can be received from this station. The system will automatically switch to a traffic announcement if a traffic information is received.

When the EON (Enhanced Other Network) TP station is selected, the "TP" indicator will also appear on the screen.

EON information cross-references other programme services that broadcast traffic information, and when EON information is received, traffic reports can be received through another programme service.

#### To enable/disable the TA function:

 Press COURCE (Source/Private Mode) switch to select to FM radio. P77
 Press and hold (Home) button/ (Home) switch to display the RDS setting menu.

Select [Traffic Announcement], and then press <sup>A</sup>⊖ or ENT switch to select (enable) or deselect (disable) the function.

Alternative freq	
Fraffic annound	ň
Regionalisation	

#### Default: Off (deselected)

When a radio station capable of providing traffic information is selected with the function enabled, the "TP" indicator appears on the screen.





<u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book</u> 105 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

- If a traffic announcement is received, the popup message will be displayed on the screen and the current audio source will be interrupted by a traffic announcement. The system returns to the previous audio source after the traffic announcement is finished.



#### To adjust the TA volume:

The TA volume can be adjusted in 30 levels. While traffic announcement is broadcasting, push VOL lever up or down until your favourite volume is set. The new volume level for traffic information is temporarily stored in memory. The next time you listen to traffic information, the volume will be at the previous level.

#### VOLUME level range: Level 0 to 30



#### PTY (Programme type)

This function lets you know the type of programmes the selected RDS station is broadcasting. For example, if the station is broadcasting Pop Music, "Pop Music" is shown on the screen. If it is a station of culture programmes, "Culture" will be shown. The principal PTYs are shown in the following.

**Information**: General information and advice.

**Pop Music**: Commercial music of popular appeal.

**Serious Classical**: performances of major orchestral works.

Other Music: Other types of music, such as, Jazz, R & B, Folk, Country, Reggae. Culture: Programmes concerned with any aspect of national or regional culture. Varied: Light entertainment programmes.

# Connecting your iPhone/iPod/ Android Phone/USB device

You can connect your iPhone/iPod/Android phone/USB device using a certified cable to the USB connector or connect a USB flash drive, etc. to the USB connector directly. Make sure to use the factory USB cable that came with your device.

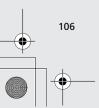
- Some USB flash drives maybe unsupported or incompatible and will cause abnormal audio function, such as skipping or playing delays.
- Do not use hard disks, card readers, and memory readers which may damage the device and data. If you accidentally connect the one of them, turn the ignition switch **O** (Off) and remove it.

## Compatible Devices

iPhone, iPod, Android phone and other devices compatible with your audio system are:

USB flash drive	Standard	USB 2.0/3.0	
	File systems	FAT32 (recommendation),	
		FAT16, HFS+	
	Storage capacities	From 256 MB to 64 GB	
	Maximum	8 hierarchies	
	hierarchies		
	Maximum folders	512 folders	
	Maximum files	65,524 files (same limitation	
		in one folder)	
	Maximum file/	255 characters	
	folder name size		
	Maximum file size	2 GB (in single file)	
iPhone 5 or later	iO	S 10 or later	
iPod touch (5th generation or later)	iOS 9 or later		
iPod nano (7th generation or later)			
iPad/iPad Air/iPad Mini (all model)	Not supported		
iPod classic/iPod shuffle	Not supported		
Android phone	Android 5.0 or later		
Hard disk drive	Not supported		
Card reader/Memory reader	No	ot supported	
CD/DVD/FD drive	No	ot supported	
USB hub	No	ot supported	

The audio system may not be compatible with the latest model and the latest OS version.



# Audio Files on Device

MP3/WMA/WAV files in your device can be played on the following specifications.

	Standard	MPEG1 Audio Layer 3
	File extension	.mp3
	Sample rate	32/44.1/48
MP3	(kHz)	
ivii 5	Bit rates (kbps)	32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/
		192/224/256/320/VBR
	Available tags	ID3v2 (v2.2/v2.3/v2.4)
		ID3v1 (v1.0/v1.1)
	Standard	Windows Media Audio Version 7/8/9
	File extension	.wma
WMA	Digital rights management (DRM)	Not supported
VVIVIA	Sample rate (kHz)	16/22.05/32/44.1/48
	Bit rates (kbps)	5 to 320/VBR
	Available tags	ASF
	Standard	WAVE
WAV	File extension	.wav
	Sample rate (kHz)	16/22.05/32/44.1/48

- Do not edit other type of extension. Playing a device containing these kind of files can cause troubles such as the device or speakers failure.
- Depending on the type of the character code used for the music information of audio files, the music information may not be displayed correctly.

Windows Media is registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. in the U.S. and other countries.

#### To Connect Your iPhone/iPod/Android Phone/USB Device USB 1 connector (1.5A)

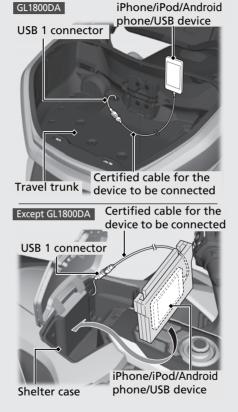
• To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

# 1 GL1800DA

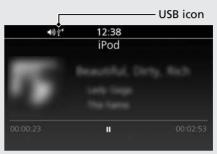
**Operation Guide** 

Open the travel trunk. **P.145** Except GL1800DA Open the shelter case. **P.148** 

2 Connect your iPhone/iPod/Android phone/USB device using a certified cable to the USB 1 connector or connect a USB flash drive, etc. to the USB 1 connector directly.

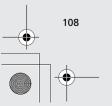


After connecting, the USB icon appears on the screen.



3 Store your device in the travel trunk (GL1800DA) or shelter case (Except GL1800DA).

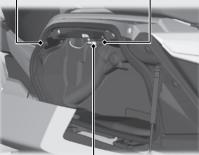
4 Close the travel trunk or shelter case.



#### USB 2 connector (1.0A)

- Apple CarPlay/Android Auto cannot be used with USB connection via USB 2 connector.
- 1 Open the left saddlebag. P. 145
- 2 Release the USB 2 connector from the connector cap.
- Connect your iPhone/iPod/Android phone/USB device using a certified cable to the USB 2 connector or connect a USB flash drive, etc. to the USB 2 connector directly.
- Left saddlebag

Connector cap



USB 2 connector

After connecting, the USB icon appears on the screen.



4 Store your device in the left saddlebag.5 Close the left saddlebag.

After using the USB connector, return the USB connector to the connector cap.

#### To Disconnect Your iPhone/iPod/Android Phone/USB Device

You can disconnect your iPhone/iPod/ Android phone/USB device at any time. Make sure to follow the device's instructions on how to disconnect the device from the cable.

When you disconnect your device, the USB icon will disappear from the screen.

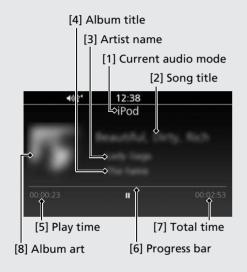
- Do not leave your device in the vehicle (travel trunk, shelter case or saddlebag, etc.). High heat will damage it.
- Read precaution statements on the provided instructions of your device.
- Some USB flash drives (such as devices with security lockout features, etc.) may not be used or restricted to its function.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.

**Operation Guide** 

- iPhone, iPod, Android phone or some of USB devices can be charged with the USB cable when the ignition switch is in the | (On) or ACC position. The charging time may be longer than usual.
- We recommend covering your devices with an audio pouch, or soft fabric or cover to protect from damage.
- Be careful to not get the USB connector wet.
- Do not connect with a hub.
- Do not connect incompatible devices.
- If the audio system does not recognize the device, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device.

#### **Playing Audio**

The audio system can play music stored on a device connected via USB or *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup>.



#### **Screen Information**

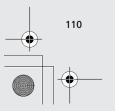
The information displayed on the screen differs depending on the connected device and the type of file being played back. The system supports ID3 tag information. If a track does not have an ID3 tag, the song title or file name is displayed. [1] Current audio mode [2] Song title [3] Artist name [4] Album title (Folder name) [5] Play time [6] Progress bar [7] Total time

[8] Album art (Displayed only when the device is connected via USB and the track contains artwork.)

# To Play a Track

Connect the device you want to play from.

Bluetooth setting: ►P9T Connecting your iPhone/iPod/ Android phone/USB device: ►P108
Select the audio output device. ►P77
Press <sup>COURCE</sup> switch to select [USB], [iPod] or [Bluetooth].
Press or ENT switch to display the playlist. ►P112
Select the supported audio file you want to play. ►P107
Press or ENT switch to play a track.



) 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# To Pause a Track

Push and hold  $\frac{\text{(GOURCE)}}{\text{(If}\times)}$  switch to pause a track and mute the volume.

► A diagonal line appears in the audio output status icon on the screen.



Audio output status icon

To resume a track, operate **VOL** lever while volume is muted.

# To Change a Track

To skip to the next track, move ⊖⇔ or press ➤ on the 4-way key switch. To go back to the beginning of the current or previous track, move ↔⊖ or press ◄ on the 4-way key switch.

# To Select the Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes. To switch the mode, press and hold B or **ENT** switch.

The audio play mode status icon appears on the upper part of the screen.

Cycles through the play modes as follows: Normal play mode (blank)  $\rightarrow$  Repeat all play mode  $\rightarrow$  Track repeat play mode  $\rightarrow$ Random play mode  $\rightarrow$  Random & Repeat all play mode  $\rightarrow$  Random & track play mode

<b>4</b> 0°‡* (⊊	3) 12:38 iPod	ing Rich
00:00:23		

Audio play mode status icon

- Repeat all play mode: Repeats all tracks in the current playlist ([Artists], [Albums] or [Folders], etc.).
- C Track repeat play mode: Repeats the current track.
- Random play mode: Plays tracks randomly from the current playlist.
- Andom & Repeat all play mode: Plays tracks randomly and repeats all tracks in the current playlist.
- Random & track play mode: Plays tracks randomly and repeats the current track.

**Operation Guide** 

#### To Select a Track from the Playlist

You can select a track from various playlists depending on the connected device.

Operation Guide

112



Press ☺ or ENT switch to display the playlist.
 Press ◄/▷ on the 4-way key switch to change the playlist tab.
 When iPod or *Bluetooth®* device is connected: [Artists] → [Albums] → [Playlist] → [Songs] → [Genres]
 When USB device is connected: [Folders] → [Songs]
 Select a desired item from the playlist, and then press ☺ or ENT switch.

- Available operating functions may differ depending on the connected device and the type of file being played back.
- If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay.
- If an Android phone is connected via Android Auto, the USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Android Auto.

## **Apple CarPlay**

If you connect an Apple CarPlaycompatible iPhone to the system via USB, you can use the multi-information display, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone calls, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

- Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 10 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.
- Park your vehicle in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.
- In no event shall Honda be liable for any damages or troubles that occur in the use of iPhone.
- If a mobile network communication is unstable due to surrounding conditions or signal strength conditions, Apple CarPlay functions may not be available.
- To use Apple CarPlay, a headset connection is necessary. If headset connection is broken due to headset battery depletion or communication failure, Apple CarPlay cannot be used until the connection is restored.

- You cannot operate Apple CarPlay by the centre panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion.
- Application and menu items displayed on the screen may differ depending on the connected device and iOS version.
- While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth®* handsfree calling, disconnect the USB cable from your iPhone and connect your iPhone via *Bluetooth®*.

# To connect the paired device:

- For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.
- Apple CarPlay cannot be used with USB connection via USB 2 connector.
- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

# Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services.

Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

#### Use of User and Vehicle Information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

#### To Setup Apple CarPlay

Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the screen.

Enable the Apple CarPlay setting.
 P.88

2 Pair the headsets.

**Operation Guide** 

114

Connect your iPhone to the USB port located in the travel trunk GL1800DA or shelter case Except GL1800DA. P.108
 When connecting your iPhone, if it is recognised as iPod, disconnect the USB cable once, enable the Apple CarPlay P.88, and then reconnect the USB cable again.

When the disclaimer message appears on the screen, select [Enable once] or [Always enable], and then press or ENT switch.

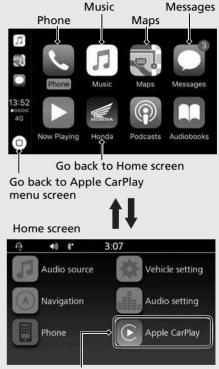


[Enable once]: Allows only once.
(Prompt shows again next time.)
[Always enable]: Allows anytime.
(Prompt does not show again.)
[Cancel]: Does not allow this consent.
If select [Cancel] and do not allow this consent, need to reconnect as iPod.

**6** Apple CarPlay menu screen appears.

#### Apple CarPlay Menu

Apple CarPlay menu screen



Go to Apple CarPlay menu screen

#### Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

#### Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

#### Maps

Display Apple CarPlay map and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models equipped with Navigation System Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

#### Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

#### Honda

Go back to the Home screen.

# 0

Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

# Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

To activate Siri, pairing with device such as a headset must be paired.



#### To Activate Siri

1 Start Apple CarPlay. 
P.114

**2** Unlock your iPhone and enable Siri.

For details, refer to the iPhone User Guide, etc.

3 Press and hold № switch on the left handlebar.

4 Say a voice command through the paired headset.

Siri may not be recognised correctly due to the effect of wind noise during running or external noise. In that case, try to change the position of the microphone or to adjust the windscreen height. **P.153** 

# Below Are Examples of Questions and Commands for Siri

- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

#### **To Deactivate Siri**

Press and hold  $\mathbb{A}^{\mathsf{L}}$  switch on the left handlebar.

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

#### **Android Auto**

If you connect an Android Auto compatible Android phone to the system via 1.5A USB port, you can use the multi-information display, instead of the Android phone display, to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Notification centre, and voice search functions.

When you first use Android Auto, you will required to complete initial setting on your phone screen. We recommend that you complete this initial setting while safely parked before using Android Auto.

- To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.
- Only Android 5.0 or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android phone.
- Park your vehicle in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.
- In no event shall Honda be liable for any damages or troubles that occur in the use of Android phone.

- If a mobile network communication is unstable due to surrounding conditions or signal strength conditions, Android Auto functions may not be available.
- To use Android Auto, a headset connection is necessary.

# To connect the paired device:

- You cannot operate Android Auto by the center panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion.
- Application and menu items displayed on the screen may differ depending on the connected device setting and Android version.
- When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Audio.
- For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.
- Android Auto cannot be used with USB connection via USB 2 connector.
- Google, Android, Google Maps, Google Play and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

# Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services.

Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

#### Use of User and Vehicle Information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to /from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.



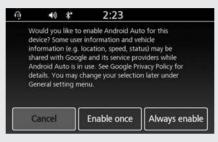


#### To Setup Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. Use of Android Auto will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your Android phone to enhance the Android Auto experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the screen.

- 1 Pair the headsets.
- Connect your Android phone to the USB 1 connector located in the travel trunk or shelter case. 
   Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

3 When the disclaimer message appears on the screen, select [Enable once] or [Always enable], and then press ☺ or ENT switch.



[Enable once]: Allows only once.
(Prompt shows again next time.)
[Always enable]: Allows anytime.
(Prompt does not show again.)
[Cancel]: Does not allow this consent.

4 Android Auto screen appears.

**5** To appear App launcher screen, select and then press 🖑 or **ENT** switch.





#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 118 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Audio System (Continued)

#### App launcher screen

#### App launcher screen

**Operation Guide** 

118



Go to Android Auto screen

#### Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models equipped with Navigation System Only one navigation system (preinstalled navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be canceled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

## Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voice mail.

# Voice search

Operate voice search.

# A Notification centre

See recent calls, messages, and alerts.

#### Go to App launcher screen

The app launcher opens.

#### Exit

Go back to the Home Screen.

## Operating voice search

To activate the voice search, pairing with device such as a headset must be paired.



Maps VT.Music Podcasts. Phone.

Press and hold 5 switch on the left handlebar to operate Android Auto with your voice.

You can also activate the voice search by selecting the U icon.

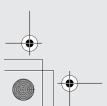
Voice search may not be recognized correctly due to the effect of wind noise during running or external noise. In that case, try to change the position of the microphone or to adjust the windscreen height.

# Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.





# Using *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Handsfree Calling

*Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> handsfree calling allows you to make and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

To use the handsfree calling, you need a *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> compatible mobile phone and *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> headsets.

- You cannot operate the handsfree calling functions by the centre panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion.
- If *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> connection is unstable due to surrounding conditions or radio wave conditions, the handsfree calling functions may not be available.
- While talking, you may be hard to hear due to wind noise during running or external noise. In that case, try to change the position of the microphone or to adjust the windscreen height. <a>P.153</a>
- The audio output will switch from speaker to headset automatically when making or receiving a phone call. (Even if the headset is not connected).

### Preparation

Connect with the paired mobile phone.

 When the phonebook import function is enabled, the contents of the mobile phone's phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.
 The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Phonebook Download:

2 Connect the paired headsets (for rider and passenger if necessary). 
P.97
3 Enter the phone screen.

# Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number or by using the imported phonebook, call history or speed dial entries.

To change the call mode, press  $\checkmark$  on the 4-way key switch.

Changes the call modes as follows:

[Speed Dial]  $\bigcirc$  P.121)  $\rightarrow$  [Phonebook]  $\bigcirc$  P.124)  $\rightarrow$  [Call History]  $\bigcirc$  P.124)  $\rightarrow$  [Dial by Number]  $\bigcirc$  P.121)

#### To adjust the phone volume: **P.77** To enable/disable a call with passenger's headset: **P.99**

- Certain manual functions are disabled while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.
- Only previously stored speed dial entries and call history can be called while the vehicle is in motion. However, if Apple CarPlay/Android Auto are running, you can make a call using the Siri/voice search voice control system while the vehicle is in motion.



#### To Make a Call Using a Phone Number [Dial by number]

This function is disabled while the vehicle is in motion.



- Select [Dial by number].
- 2 Rotate S or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4-way key switch to enter a number, and then press S or ENT switch to set the number.

Select [Dial], and then press or ENT switch to make a call.
 ►To cancel the call, press or ENT switch.

To end the call, press and hold ⊮S<sup>\*</sup> (Voice control) switch on the left handlebar.

► The same action can be done by selecting [End call] on the screen.



## To Make a Call Using a Speed Dial Entry [Speed dial]

You can make a call using the speed dial while the vehicle is in motion.

To make a call using the speed dial, you need to store the speed dial number in advance.

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored.

- Select [Speed dial].
- Select the phone number you want to call, and then press or ENT switch. Dialling starts automatically.
- 3 To end the call, press and hold ⊮ (Voice control) switch on the left handlebar.
  - ► The same action can be done by selecting [End call] on the screen.



# To Store a Phone Number in the Speed Dial List

Speed dial numbers can be stored in three ways.



From [Speed Dial]: Select [Speed dial].

2 Select [Add speed dial], and then press

🖞 or **ENT** switch.

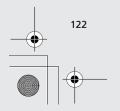
The phonebook appears.
 If the phonebook import function is disabled, select [YES] to import the phonebook manually.



Select the phone number you want to store, and then press and hold (Home) button/ (Home) switch. The phone number will be stored in the speed dial list. From [Call history]/[Phonebook]:
 Select [Call history] or [Phonebook].
 Select the phone number you want to store, and then press and hold dimensional hold dimensi hold dimensional hold dimensional hold dimensional hold dim



The phone number will be stored in the speed dial list.



#### To Rearrange the Order of the Speed Dial List

- 2 Select [Rearrange speed dial], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.

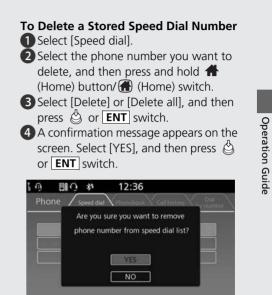
Delete Delete all		hone	Speed dial	Phoneboc	ok Call hintory C	Dial by numb
				Delete		
	Rearrange speed dial			Delete a	1	
Rearrange speed dial			Rearr	ange spe	ed dial	Ĩ

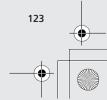
**3** Select the phone number you want to arrange, and then press  $\bigcirc$  or **ENT** switch.

A Rotate S or press ▲ / ▼ on the 4way key switch to change the order of the speed dial list.

ΙŌ	B10 *	5:20	-
Pho			
_			

**5** Press 💩 or **ENT** switch to set your selection.





#### To Make a Call Using the Imported Phonebook [Phonebook]

This function is disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

When the phonebook import function is enabled, the contents of the phone's phonebook is automatically imported to the system.

# Phonebook Download: P.99



If the phonebook import function is disabled, a popup message will be displayed on the screen. To import the phonebook manually, select [YES], and then press 🖉 or **ENT** switch.

ŋ		**	12:31		
Phone	e / sp	ded dial	Phonebook	Call litition	pia) v number
	Dovo		t to download	nhonebook 2	
	DO JO			phonebook r	
			YES		
			NO		

#### 1 Select [Phonebook].

- 2 The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Select a name, and then press or ENT switch.
- **3** Select the phone number you want to call, and then press ☺ or **ENT** switch. Dialling starts automatically.
- 4 To end the call, press and hold ⊮S<sup>6</sup> (Voice control) switch on the left handlebar.
  - The same action can be done by selecting [End call] on the screen.

#### To Make a Call Using the Call History [Call history]

You can make a call using the call history while the vehicle is in motion. Call history displays the last 30 dialled, received, or missed calls.



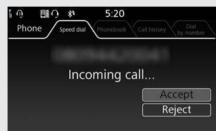
# Select [Call history].

- 2 Select the phone number you want to
  - call, and then press 💩 or **ENT** switch.
  - 📲 : Dialled call
  - E : Received call
  - **[**] (red): Missed call
- 3 To end the call, press and hold ⊮ (Voice control) switch on the left handlebar.
  - The same action can be done by selecting [End call] on the screen.



#### Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the Incoming Call screen appears.



#### **Ring Tone**

If the connected mobile phone supports "in band ring tone", the ring tone stored on the phone sounds automatically while receiving a call automatically. If "in band ring tone" is not supported, the ring tone stored in the audio system sounds.

#### To Receive a Call

When a call comes in, press  $\mathbb{A}^{5}$  switch on the left handlebar to receive the call.

The same action can be done by selecting [Accept] on the screen.



් switch

To adjust the phone volume: To enable/disable a call with passenger's headset: P.99

#### To Reject a Call

When a call comes in, press and hold <sup>™</sup>S<sup>•</sup> switch on the left handlebar to reject a call.
The same action can be done by selecting [Reject] on the screen.

#### To End a Call

While talking, press and hold 25 switch on the left handlebar to end the call.

► The same action can be done by selecting [End call] on the screen.



**Operation Guide** 

#### Making Multiple Calls

You can handle multiple calls at the same time if the connected mobile phone supports the call waiting function.

# To Receive a Second Call

When a call comes in, press  $\mathbb{A}^{\bullet}$  switch on the left handlebar to receive the call. If the recipient answers, the first call is put on hold.

The same action can be done by selecting [Accept] on the screen.

# To Make a Second Call



During a call, select [Dial], and then press or ENT switch.
 Select a phone number from [Speed dial], [Phonebook] or [Call history] or

enter a phone number in [Dial by number].

► To change the call mode, press 
► on the 4-way key switch.

3 The second outgoing call will start. If the recipient answers, the first call is put on hold.

# To Switch Between Multiple Calls

# To End a Call in Progress

- Press and hold <sup>№</sup> switch on the left handlebar to end the second call.
   The same action can be done by
  - selecting [End call] on the screen.
- 2 The system will return to the first call on hold.



Select [Switch calls], and then press 🖑 or **ENT** switch.



126

# 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 127 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# Sending DTMF tones during a call

You can send DTMF (Dual Tone Multi Frequency) tones during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

This function is disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

ΪŴ	0	*	5:20		
Phone	• / s	peed dial	Phanebook	Call lintor	Dial by number
			0:08		nd call Dial ich tones
ዝ ዓ Phone		* peed-dial	7:20 Phanebook	Call histor	Dial
	2( #	3)4	)56	)78	000
					Quit

- During a call, select [Touch tones], and then press 🙆 or **ENT** switch.
- 2 To send a DTMF tone, select a number key, and then press 🖑 or **ENT** switch.
- ► To return to the previous screen, select [Quit] and press 🖞 or **ENT** switch.

**Operation Guide** 

# **Starting the Engine**

Start your engine using the following procedure, regardless of whether the engine is cold or warm.

This vehicle is equipped with a Honda SMART Key system. Always keep Honda SMART Key on you when you ride the vehicle.

### NOTICE

**Operation Guide** 

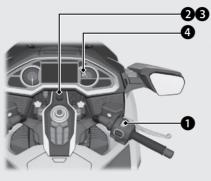
128

- If the starter operates but the engine does not start, turn the ignition switch to O (Off) and wait 10 seconds before trying to start the engine again to recover battery voltage.
- Extended fast idling and revving the engine can damage the engine, and the exhaust system.
- Snapping the throttle or fast idling for more than about 5 minutes may cause exhaust pipe discolouration.
- The engine will not start if the throttle is fully open.

# GL1800/B

- **1** Make sure the engine stop switch is in the  $\bigcap$  (Run) position.
- 2 Unlock the steering. P.61
- **3** Turn the ignition switch to (On).
- CPE55
   Shift the transmission to Neutral (N indicator comes on). Alternatively, pull

in the clutch lever to start your vehicle with the transmission in gear so long as the side stand is raised.



**5** Press the start button with the throttle completely closed.

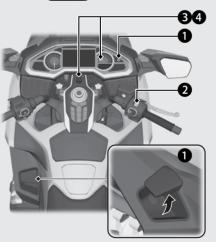


### GL1800BD/DA

- Check the parking brake ((P) parking brake indicator comes on).
- **2** Make sure the engine stop switch is in the  $\bigcirc$  (Run) position.
- 3 Unlock the steering. 4 Turn the ignition switch to [ (On).

#### P.55

► Make sure the N indicator comes on. If the N indicator does not come on. ► P.131



21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 129 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

S Press the start button with the throttle completely closed.

6 Make sure the parking brake lever is released before riding.



#### If the engine does not start:

- (1) Open the throttle fully and press the start button once.
- (2) Repeat the normal starting procedure.
- (3) If the engine starts, open the throttle slightly if idling is unstable.
- (4) If the engine does not start, wait 10 seconds before trying steps (1) & (2) again.
- If Engine Will Not Start P. 189

# **Quick Engine Starting**

You can also start the engine by the following procedure.

- Make sure the status of the Honda SMART Key is active → R.62 and enter the operating range. → R.63
- While applying the brake lever or pedal firmly, press and hold the start button until engine starts.
  - The steering lock is automatically unlocked at the same time.
  - The quick engine starting will not operate if the transmission is in gear. The process will stop with the ignition switch | (On). Start the engine with normal starting procedure. P.128
  - ► The engine will not start unless you perform the quick starting with correct conditions such as applying the brake. The process will stop with the ignition switch ↓ (On). Start the engine with normal starting procedure.

# When You Stop the Engine

- 1 To stop the engine, put the gear to Neutral (N indicator comes on).
- 2 Turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off).
  - ► GL1800BD/DA If you turn the ignition switch to O (Off) when the vehicle in gear, the engine will shut off with the clutch disengaged.
- (3) GL1800BD/DA Set the parking brake when you park the vehicle. ←P.66



) 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 130 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# **Shifting Gears**

#### GL1800/B

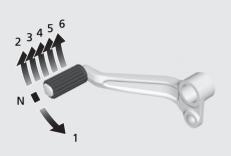
Your vehicle transmission has 6 forward gears in a one-down, five-up shift pattern.

#### GL1800BD/DA

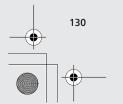
Your vehicle is equipped with an automatically controlled 7-speed transmission. It can be shifted automatically (by AT MODE) or manually (by MT MODE).

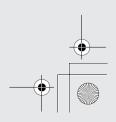


۲



If you put the vehicle in gear with the side stand down, the engine will shut off.





#### GL1800BD/DA Dual Clutch Transmission

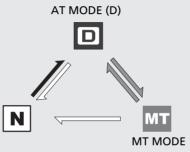
In order to respond to rider demands in a broad range of situations, the transmission is equipped with two operating modes, AT MODE (D) (automatic shift for regular operation); and MT MODE (for 7-speed manual operation), which delivers the same shift feel as a manual transmission.

Always use the recommended tyres to ensure correct Dual Clutch Transmission operation.

The Dual Clutch Transmission system runs a self check immediately after starting the engine.

"-" appears in the gear position indicator for a few seconds, then goes out. While "-" appears, you cannot shift into gear. Press the D side of the N-D switch

- Press the A/M switch
- ──── Press the N side of the N-D switch



**Neutral (N):** Neutral is selected automatically when you turn the ignition switch to **(**On).

# If neutral is not selected when you turn the ignition switch to | (On):

Turn the ignition **O** (Off) and **(**On) again.

You may hear (click) noises when the transmission shifts to Neutral (N). This is normal.

# When you can change between Neutral (N) and AT MODE (D):

- Vehicle is stopped and the engine is idling.
- Throttle is completely closed. It is not possible to change from Neutral (N) to AT mode (D) while the throttle is applied.
- You cannot change between Neutral (N) and AT MODE (D) while the wheels are rotating.
- ► Side stand is raised.

#### NOTICE

To prevent clutch damage, do not use the throttle to keep the vehicle stopped uphill.

**AT MODE (D):** In this mode the gears are shifted automatically according to your riding conditions.

And also using the shift up switch (+) or shift down switch (-), you can temporarily shift up or down. These switches are convenient when you want to temporarily down-shift in front of a curve, etc.

**MT MODE:** You can choose between 7 gears in this mode.



# Shifting Gears (Continued)

# Changing between Neutral and AT MODE/MT MODE

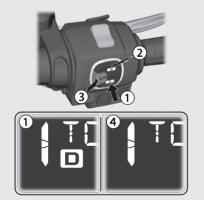
Changing from Neutral (N) to AT MODE (D) Press the D side of the N-D switch (1). The D (AT MODE) indicator comes on, "1" is shown in the gear position indicator and first gear is selected.

# Changing from AT MODE or MT MODE to Neutral (N)

Press the N side of the N-D switch ((2)).

## Changing between AT MODE and MT MODE

Press the A/M switch (3). The D (AT MODE) indicator goes out while MT MODE is selected (4).



# **Riding in MT MODE**

Shift up and down with the shift up switch (+) and shift down switch (-). The selected gear is shown on the gear position indicator.

- ► If the MT MODE is selected, the transmission does not shift up automatically. Do not allow the engine revs to go into the red zone.
- The transmission automatically shifts down when you slow down, even in MT MODE.
- You will start from 1st gear even if MT MODE is selected.

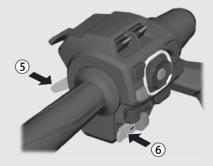
# **Downshifting Blipping Control**

In MT MODE, this system controls down shifting with the throttle completely closed by increasing engine revs automatically to match the gear ratio.

This system may not increase engine revs in some running conditions.

### Gear shift operation

Shifting Up: Press the shift up switch (+) (5)). Shifting Down: Press the shift down switch (-) (6)). You cannot continue shifting gear by keeping the shift switch pressed. To continue shifting gear release the switch and press it again.



**Shift Limit** You cannot downshift if the engine will exceed the rev limit.

# Walking Speed Mode

# GL1800BD/DA

The Walking Speed mode assists the rider with getting the vehicle into or out of tight areas by maneuvering the vehicle at slow speed.

Operate the vehicle's engine only in a well-ventilated area.

Make sure there are no obstacles or people in the area. Avoid steep or uneven surfaces. Carrying a passenger while in Walking Speed mode is not recommended because it makes balance and control more difficult to maintain.

- Sit astride the vehicle, in your normal riding position, with both feet on the ground.
- 2 Make sure the transmission is in neutral (N indicator comes on) and the side stand is up.
- **3** Start the engine. →P. 128

Press the Walking Speed mode switch while applying the brake lever or pedal. The Walking Speed mode indicator is displayed.



#### Gear position indicator





# Walking Speed Mode (Continued)

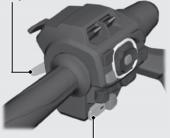
**5** To move the vehicle backward, press and hold the shift down switch (-), and then release the brakes. To move the vehicle forward, press and

hold the shift up switch (+), and then release the brakes.

- The vehicle will move forward/ backward as long as you hold the switch down.
- When the shift up switch (+) (forward) is pressed, "F" is displayed on the gear position indicator. When the shift down switch (-) (backward) is pressed, "R" is displayed on the gear position indicator.
- It may take a few seconds before the vehicle starts to move.
- When operating the vehicle in Walking Speed mode, be sure to sit on the vehicle in your normal riding position.
- When the engine is stopped in Walking Speed mode, the clutch will disengage. This will cause the vehicle to abruptly lose traction.

While in Walking Speed mode, do not press the engine stop switch except in an emergency. This will cause the vehicle to abruptly lose traction.

#### Shift up switch (+)



Shift down switch (-)

Guide the vehicle cautiously, using your legs to maintain balance. Use extreme care to maintain balance while in Walking Speed mode on loose surfaces (sand, dirt, gravel) or slick pavement. **6** To stop the vehicle, apply the brake lever or pedal.

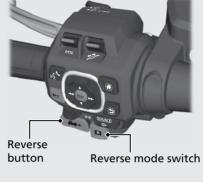
To end Walking Speed mode, apply the brake lever or pedal. After the vehicle has stopped, press the Walking Speed mode switch while operating the brake lever or pedal, or press the N side of the N-D switch. Make sure the Walking Speed mode indicator turns off and the <u>N</u> indicator comes on.

134

# Moving in Reverse

Your vehicle's reverse system allows you to back out of a parking space at slow speed. Make sure there are no obstacles or people in the direction of travel. Avoid steep or uneven surfaces. Carrying a passenger while reversing is not recommended because it makes balance and control more difficult to maintain.

- Sit astride the vehicle, in your normal riding position, with both feet on the ground.
- 2 Make sure the transmission is in neutral Indicator comes on) and the side stand is up.
- **3** Start the engine. **●P**.128
- Press the Reverse mode switch to turn on the reverse mode.
  - If the engine is not running, the reverse system cannot be activated.



S When you are ready to back up, press and hold the Reverse button. The vehicle will move in reverse as long as you hold the button down. ("R" is displayed on the gear position indicator.)

To prevent battery discharge, do not press the Reverse button for more than 1 minute.

6 Guide the vehicle backward cautiously, using your legs to maintain balance. Use extreme care to maintain balance while reversing on loose surfaces (sand, dirt, gravel) or slick pavement.

- Release the Reverse button, and the vehicle will stop.
- 8 After your vehicle has stopped, press the Reverse mode switch to turn off the system. Make sure the <u>N</u> indicator comes on.

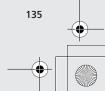
#### NOTICE

To avoid damaging the reverse system, do not engage or disengage reverse when the vehicle is moving.

#### **Reverse System Overload**

The Reverse mode is designed to move the vehicle at a constant slow speed. If the vehicle begins moving slower or faster than this speed because of obstacles or a steep pavement angle, press the Reverse mode switch to turn off the system and carefully roll the vehicle to a more level, unobstructed surface, and then start again.





21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 136 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# **Riding Mode**

You can change the riding mode. The following parameters change according to each riding mode.

- Engine output characteristic
- Brake feel

**Operation Guide** 

- GL1800BD/DA DCT characteristic
- GL1800/DA Torque Control operating level
- GL1800/DA Suspension damping characteristic

#### Riding mode indicator



The following riding modes are available:

#### TOUR mode:

TOUR mode provides an engine and braking feel and suspension damping characteristics optimised for comfortable riding in situations such as long distance touring.

# SPORT mode:

SPORT mode has a quicker and more powerful engine feel, harder braking feel, and harder suspension damping characteristics than with TOUR mode. For models equipped with DCT, shifting characteristics are oriented to maintain middle and high engine speeds.

#### ECON mode:

ECON mode has a gentler engine feel than with TOUR mode.

For models equipped with DCT, shifting characteristics are oriented to maintain low and middle engine speeds.

## RAIN mode:

RAIN mode has a gentler engine feel and softer suspension damping characteristics than with TOUR mode.

For models equipped with DCT, shifting characteristics are gentler than those with TOUR mode.

# Selecting the Riding Mode

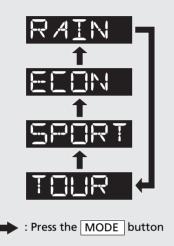
Press the **MODE** button while the throttle is fully closed.

- The riding mode indicator blinks until the riding mode is changed.
- The riding mode does not change until the throttle is fully closed.
- Each time the ignition switch is turned to (On), the riding mode will automatically be set to TOUR mode.





) 21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 137 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

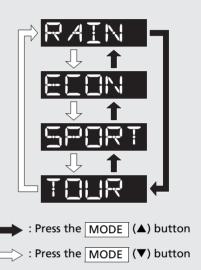


#### GL1800/B

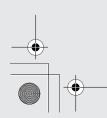
Press one of the **MODE** buttons ( $\blacktriangle$  or  $\blacktriangledown$ ) while the throttle is fully closed.

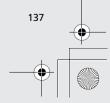
- The riding mode indicator blinks until the riding mode is changed.
- The riding mode does not change until the throttle is fully closed.
- Each time the ignition switch is turned to
   (On), the riding mode will automatically be set to TOUR mode.

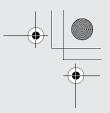




If all the segments of the riding mode indicator are displayed, see your dealer for servicing.







# Honda Selectable Torque Control (Torque Control)

#### GL1800/DA

Torque Control will limit the amount of torque applied to the rear wheel when the system detects the rear wheel spin during acceleration.

Torque Control can be turned on or off in the multi-information display.

Q 10	0:07
Vehicl	e setting
Auto cancel turn signa	al 📿
Idling stop	
Suspension preload	• <b>i</b> ; <b>i</b> ; • <b>i</b> ]
Units	
HSTC	

— HSTC (Honda Selectable Torque Control) Torque Control mode (on/off) cannot be changed while riding.

Stop the vehicle first and select the Torque Control mode (on/off) in the multi-information display.

- Each time the ignition switch is turned (On), the Torque Control is automatically turned to on.
- When the Riding mode is changed, the Torque Control characteristic also changes according to each mode.

Torque Control indicator



Torque Control OFF indicator

# **Cruise Control**

The cruise control system allows you to maintain a steady speed within specified range.

The available speed setting range and operating gear are listed below:

	GL1800BD/DA	GL1800/B
Available speed setting range	30 - 160 km/h (20 - 100 mph)	50 - 160 km/h (30 - 100 mph)
Operating gear	From 3rd to 7th gear	From 3rd to 6th gear

When cruise control is on, your speed will still vary slightly, particularly going up and down hills.

Cruise control is intended for use only on straight, uncongested highways. Do not use cruise control on city streets, winding roads, during bad weather, or at any other time when you need total control of the throttle.

# **AWARNING**

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash in which you could be seriously hurt or killed.

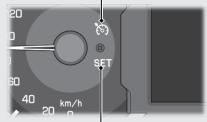
Use the cruise control only when travelling on open highways in good weather.

# **To Set Cruise Control**

 Make sure the travelling speed and operating gear are conformed to requirement of the system. Any speed other than available range will not be memorised.

- Press the cruise control main switch. (The CRUISE MAIN indicator will come on.)
- **3** Accelerate to the desired speed.
- Push the cruise control lever to [SET/-] side. (The CRUISE SET indicator will come on.)
   Your current travelling speed is memorised.

#### **CRUISE MAIN indicator**



**CRUISE SET indicator** 



continued 139

## Cruise Control (Continued)

#### **To Change the Set Speed** To Fine Tune the Set Speed

Display the cruise control set speed on the INFO 1 display.

- To increase the set speed: tap the cruise control lever to [RES/+] side.
- To decrease the set speed: tap the cruise control lever to [SET/-] side.

The set speed is displayed in the INFO 1 display.

#### Cruise control set speed



Each quick tap (brief push and release) on either side will change your speed by 1 km/h or 1 mph (depending on mileage meter set unit).

Any speed other than possible setting range will not be indicated (stops at the upper or lower limit speed).

#### To Change the Set Speed Continuously

 To increase the set speed: push and hold the cruise control lever to [RES/+] side.
 The system will accelerate your vehicle automatically. When you reach the desired speed, release the cruise control lever.

If the cruise control lever is pushed and held to [RES/+] side continuously, the set speed indicated in the INFO 1 display stops at the upper limit of the possible setting range.

 To decrease speed: push and hold the cruise control lever to [SET/-] side. The system will automatically slow your vehicle. When you reach the desired speed, release the cruise control lever. If the cruise control lever is pushed and held to [SET/-] side continuously, the set speed indicated in the INFO 1 display stops at the lower limit of the possible setting range.

#### To Manually Increase the Set Speed

Use the throttle to accelerate until you reach the desired speed.

2 Push and release the cruise control lever to [SET/-] side.

#### To Manually Increase Vehicle Speed

- Use the throttle in the normal manner to accelerate.
- 2 To return to the set speed, close the throttle and coast without applying the brakes. The cruise system will maintain the speed you previously set.

#### **To Cancel Cruise Control** To Disengage the System

 Press the cruise control main switch. (The CRUISE MAIN indicator goes off and the set speed will be erased from memory.)

140

<u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 141 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

# To Temporarily Disengage the System

- Perform one of the following operations to disengage the system temporarily. (CRUISE SET indicator temporarily goes off but the set speed remains in memory.)
  - Apply the brake lever or pedal.
  - Rotate the throttle grip past the automatically closed position in the deceleration direction.
  - GL1800/B Disengage the clutch or operate the shift lever.

- **2** To resume cruise control:
  - GL1800BD/DA If you are still over 30 km/h (20 mph), push and release the cruise control lever to [RES/+] side.
     GL1800/B If you are still over 50 km/h (30 mph), push and release the cruise control lever to [RES/+] side.
  - GL1800BD/DA If you are under 30 km/h (20 mph), use the throttle to increase road speed above 30 km/h (20 mph) and then push and release the cruise control lever to [RES/+] side.
     GL1800/B If you are under 50 km/h (30 mph), use the throttle to increase road speed above 50 km/h (30 mph) and then push and release the cruise control lever to [RES/+] side.



#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 142 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

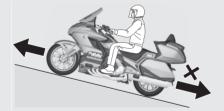
## **Hill Start Assist**

The Hill Start Assist (HSA) temporarily keeps the vehicle from rolling backward (or forward) if the brake lever or pedal is released when stopped on an incline such as a hill or parking lot slope. Brake hydraulic pressure is maintained for about 3 seconds after releasing the brake lever or pedal. This helps keep the vehicle from rolling backward (or forward) when first opening the throttle grip, thereby assisting smooth movement and lessening the burden placed on the rider.

Operation Guide

142

HSA is not a replacement for the parking brake.



Hill start assist (HSA) indicator

# 

(S) Hill start assist (HSA) indicator: Comes on in white when the HSA is ready to work, and flashes while the HSA is working.

The HSA is activated in the following conditions:

- Combined ABS indicator goes off
- Vehicle is stopped completely
- Throttle grip is closed
- Clutch lever is pulled GL1800/B
- Transmission is in gear (N indicator goes off)
- Side stand is retracted

#### Activating the HSA

To activate the HSA, squeeze the brake lever quickly until the Hill start assist (HSA) indicator comes on in white and hold the brake lever.

# Releasing the HSA GL1800BD/DA

To start the vehicle, release the brake lever and gently open the throttle. (The HSA works about 3 seconds after releasing the brake lever)

#### GL1800/B

To start the vehicle, release the brake lever, and then open the throttle grip while releasing the clutch lever. (The HSA works about 3 seconds after releasing the brake lever)

If you lower the side stand or shift the transmission to neutral while the HSA is working, the HSA will be cancelled.

HSA may not prevent the vehicle from rolling backward (or forward) if the vehicle is on a steep slope.

#### If the Hill start assist (HSA) indicator comes on in amber while riding

## **Emergency Stop Signal**

Emergency stop signal activates when the system detects hard braking about 50 km/h(31 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing both turn signal lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

When the system activates:

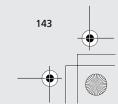
The emergency stop signal stops operating when:

- You release the brake lever and pedal.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard switch.

- The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rearend collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes both turn signals at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.
- The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard switch pressed in.

Hard braking
 Brakelights come on
 E
 Both turn signals flash

2 Both turn signal indicators blink



Operation Guide

#### a ir

#### <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 144 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Refuelling Opening the Fuel Fill Cap

① Open the fairing pocket. →P.146 2 Slide the fuel lid opener to open the fuel lid.

**3** Turn the fuel fill cap counterclockwise and remove it.

Fuel fill cap Fuel lid opener

Fuel lid

Do not fill with fuel above the lower edge of the filler neck. Fuel type: Unleaded petrol only Fuel octane number: Your vehicle is designed to use Research Octane Number (RON) 91 or higher Tank capacity: 21 litres (5.5 US gal, 4.6 Imp gal)

# Lower edge of filler neck

#### **Closing the Fuel Fill Cap**

- (1) After refuelling, be sure to tighten the fuel fill cap firmly by tighten it clockwise until it clicks.
- (2)Close the fuel lid by pushing it until it locks.
- (3) Close the fairing pocket.

#### **AWARNING**

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

Refuelling and Fuel Guidelines



# **Storage Equipment**

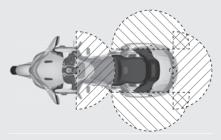
# Travel Trunk, Saddlebags and Fairing Pocket

- **GL1800/DA** equipped with the travel trunk, saddlebags and fairing pocket.
- GL1800B/BD equipped with the saddlebags and fairing pocket.

When you enter the operating range of the Honda SMART Key system with the Honda SMART Key on you, the travel trunk, saddlebags and fairing pocket can be opened.

Using the UNLOCK button on the Honda SMART Key, you can enable those who don't possess the key to open the compartments.

Each compartment can be opened when the Honda SMART Key is within the shaded area shown in the illustration.



#### To Open the Travel Trunk and Saddlebags

The travel trunk and saddlebags are for lightweight items. Cargo in the travel trunk and both

saddlebags should not exceed:

#### 9.0 kg (20.0 lb) each

However, regardless of compartment capacity, be sure you do not exceed the maximum load and cargo weight limits.

#### ➡P. 252, 254

Make sure the Honda SMART Key is activated R62, and then enter the operating range with the Honda SMART Key.

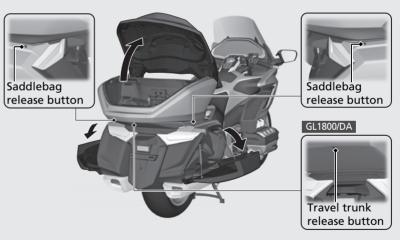
#### GL1800/DA

To open the travel trunk, press the travel trunk release button.

The travel trunk unlocks and can be opened.

To open the saddlebags, press the saddlebag release button.

Each saddlebag unlocks and opens.



**Operation Guide** 

#### Storage Equipment (Continued)

#### To Close the Travel Trunk and Saddlebags

To close a compartment, place your hands flat on the edges of its lid and press down until it is firmly closed. Make sure the travel trunk and saddlebags "OPEN" indicator is not blinking before riding.



**Operation Guide** 

146

"OPEN" indicator

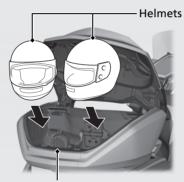
If the Saddlebags or Travel Trunk Won't Open CR203

#### GL1800/DA

You can store rider and passenger helmets in the travel trunk.

Store helmets as shown in the illustration.

- Make sure the front of the helmets are facing rearward.
- Some helmets may not fit in the compartment due to their size or design.



Travel trunk

#### To Open the Fairing Pocket

Make sure the Honda SMART Key is activated **P**.62, and then enter the operating range with the Honda SMART Key.

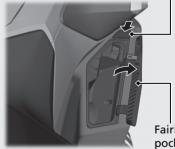
Take care not to store the deactivated Honda SMART Key in the fairing pocket.

The fairing pocket is for lightweight items. Cargo in the fairing pocket should not exceed:

#### 2.0 kg (4.5 lb)

To open the fairing pocket, press the fairing pocket opener.

#### Fairing pocket opener



Fairing pocket lid <u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 147 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

#### To Close the Fairing Pocket

To close the fairing pocket, push the lid until it is firmly closed.

- Do not store valuables in the fairing pocket.
- Make sure the fairing pocket is closed before riding.
- Be careful not to flood this area when washing your vehicle.

#### Using the remote transmitter

To allow a person who does not possess the Honda SMART Key to open compartments, press the UNLOCK button on the Honda SMART Key (Turn signals blink 2 times).

When the UNLOCK button is pressed, the compartments can be opened by someone who does not have the Honda SMART Key.



If you press the UNLOCK button, but nobody opens any of the compartments within about 30 seconds or about 30 seconds have passed after an opened compartment is closed, the compartments automatically will relock (Turn signals blinks once).

When the 30 days have passed after the ignition switch is turned to **O** (Off) or after the buttons of the Honda SMART Key is operated, the remote transmitter will no longer operate. To reset the system, turn the ignition switch **I** (On) once and then **O** (Off).

Operation Guide



#### Storage Equipment (Continued)

#### Shelter Case Except GL1800DA

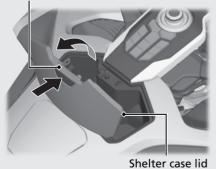
The shelter case is for lightweight items. Cargo should not exceed: **3.0 kg (6.6 lb)** 

Press the shelter case opener, the shelter case lid opens.

To close the shelter case, push the lid until it is firmly closed.

- ▶ Do not store valuables in the shelter case.
- Make sure the shelter case is closed before riding.
- Be careful not to flood this area when washing your vehicle.

#### Shelter case opener



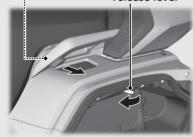
#### **Helmet Holder**

The helmet holder is located on the left grab rail.

Use the helmet holder only when parked.

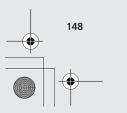
- Open the left saddlebag. →P.145 and take up the helmet holder hanger.
   →P.149
- Pull the helmet holder release lever backward to unlock the helmet holder pin.

pin. Helmet holder pin Helmet holder

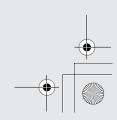


3 Insert the helmet holder hanger into the helmet D-ring.





**Operation Guide** 



21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 149 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Insert the helmet holder hanger in the direction shown into the slit on the left grab rail.

**S** To lock the helmet holder, push the helmet holder button while putting the helmet holder pin through the hole of the helmet holder hanger.

6 Close the left saddlebag.

After using the helmet holder hanger, make sure to store it in the left saddlebag.

#### **AWARNING**

Riding with a helmet attached to the holder can interfere with your ability to safely operate the vehicle and could lead to a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Use the helmet holder only while parked. Do not ride with a helmet secured by the holder.

#### Tool Kit, Owner's Manual and Helmet Holder Hanger

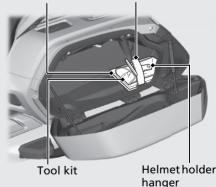
The tool kit, owner's manual and helmet holder hanger are stored in the left saddlebag. Secure them with the rubber strap.

Models equipped with Navigation System

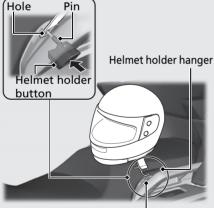
Store the Navigation System manual with the owner's manual.

Owner's manual Rubber strap

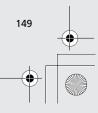
Operation Guide



Opening the Left Saddlebag C>P. 145







# **Comfort & Convenience Adjustment**

#### **Handle Grip Heater**

This vehicle is equipped with a handle grip heater that warms up your hands during ride.

Wear gloves to protect your hands from the heated grips.

**Operation Guide** 

#### Handle grip heater indicator Heater level



Handle grip heater button

#### Heater Level:

The selected heater level is changed each time the handle grip heater button is pressed.

#### Handle Grip Heater Indicator:

Displayed when the handle grip heater is on.

#### If the handle grip heater indicator blinks: CP.195



To Operate the Handle Grip Heater

1 Start the engine. CP. 128

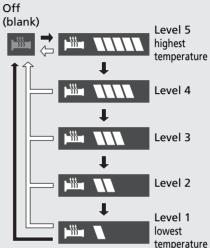
2 Press the handle grip heater button. The handle grip heater is on.

- **3** Select the heater level by pressing the switch.
  - ▶ Do not leave the handle grip heater in the high position for a long time on a warm day.

#### To Turn Off the Handle Grip Heater

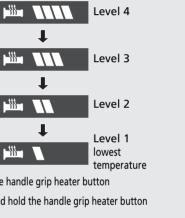
Press and hold the handle grip heater button until the handle grip heater indicator and heater level display goes off.

Do not use the handle grip heater with the engine at idle for a long time. It may result in a low (or dead) battery.



- → : Press the handle grip heater button
- $\Rightarrow$  : Press and hold the handle grip heater button

Maintains the selected level when the ignition switch is turned **O** (Off) and back to (On).



Heater level

#### Seat Heater GL1800/DA

This vehicle is equipped with the seat heaters that warms up the rider's seat and passenger's seat for comfortable riding on a cold day.

To operate, adjust the seat heater buttons with the engine started.

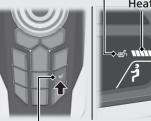
Do not use the seat heaters with the engine at idle for a long time. It may result in a low (or dead) battery.

#### Rider Seat Heater Button

The rider seat heater button is located on the centre panel.

The selected heater level is changed each time the seat heater button is pressed.

#### Rider seat heater indicator



Rider seat heater button

#### To Operate the Rider Seat Heater

- 1 Start the engine. 
  P. 128
- 2 Press the rider seat heater button. The rider seat heater is on.
- **3** Select the heater level by pressing the rider seat heater button.
  - Do not leave the seat heater in the high position for a long time on a warm day.

#### To Turn Off the Rider Seat Heater

Press and hold the rider seat button until rider seat heater indicator and heater level display goes off.

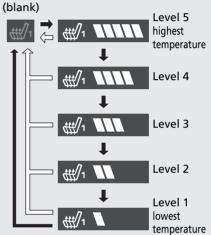
Maintains the selected level when the ignition switch is turned O (Off) and then back  $\mid$  (On).

Do not use the seat heaters with the engine at idle for a long time. It may result in a low (or dead) battery.

Do not use the seat heater when the seat is torn, cut or damaged as you can get burned.

Do not apply excessive stress to the seat, e.g. by securing articles to it with tie-down straps during transportation.

#### Off



→ : Press the rider seat heater button

 $\rightleftharpoons$  : Press and hold the rider seat heater button

151

**Operation Guide** 

#### Comfort & Convenience Adjustment (Continued)

#### Passenger Seat Heater Switch

The passenger seat heater switch is located on the left saddlebag. The passenger seat heater switch has 6 positions (OFF, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 indicated on the switch).

To Operate the Passenger Seat Heater

- 1 Start the engine. →P. 128
- 2 Select the heater level by rotating the passenger seat heater switch. To set the desired heater level, align the number on the switch with the ► mark nearby the switch.
  - ► The highest temperature is 5 and the lowest temperature is 1.
  - Do not leave the seat heater in the high position for a long time on a warm day.

#### To Turn Off the Passenger Seat Heater

Rotate the passenger seat heater switch and align the OFF on the switch with the  $\blacktriangleright$  mark.

The passenger seat heater indicator goes off.



Passenger seat heater switch Do not use the seat heater with the engine at idle for a long time. It may result in a low (or dead) battery.

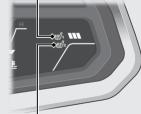
Do not use the seat heater when the seat is torn, cut or damaged as you can get burned.

Do not apply excessive stress to the seat, e.g. by securing articles to it with tie-down straps during transportation.

#### Seat Heater Indicators

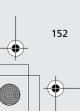
Displayed when each seat heater is on. If the seat heater indicator blinks, see your dealer for servicing.

Rider seat heater indicator



Passenger seat heater indicator

If the seat heater indicators blink:



Operation Guide

#### Adjustable Windscreen

You can adjust your windscreen height higher or lower according to your preference.

If possible, you should adjust your windscreen height to below eye level for better visibility.

#### To Adjust Windscreen Height

Turn the ignition switch to | (On). When travelling faster than 5 km/h (3 mph), the windscreen automatically adjusts to the position it was at when the ignition switch was last turned to **O** (Off). Pushing the windscreen adjusting lever upwards raises the windscreen, and pushing it downwards lowers the windscreen.

The windscreen will be raised or lowered while the adjusting lever is being pressed. When you lower the windscreen, make sure the new position will allow safe operation of the vehicle. Windscreen adjusting lever



Turning the ignition switch to **O** (Off) will automatically lower the windscreen to its original position.

To keep the windscreen raised after turning off the electrical system, such as when washing it, turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off) while pushing the windscreen adjusting lever upwards.

**Operation Guide** 

) 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 154 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

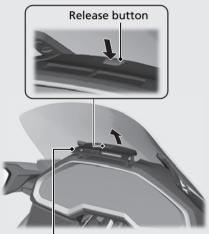
#### Comfort & Convenience Adjustment (Continued)

#### Windscreen Ventilation Louver

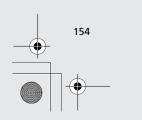
You can utilise the windscreen ventilation louver to direct the flow of fresh air.

# To Operate the Windscreen Ventilation Louver

Press the release button, then the windscreen ventilation louver pops-up.



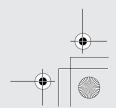
Windscreen ventilation louver



**Operation Guide** 

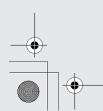
# \_\_\_\_(

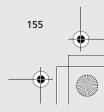




 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book
 155 ページ
 2020年10月30日
 金曜日
 午後1時26分







## Maintenance

Please read "Importance of Maintenance" and "Maintenance Fundamentals" carefully before attempting any maintenance. Refer to "Specifications" for service data.

Importance of Maintenance	<b></b> P.	157
Maintenance Schedule	P.	158
Maintenance Fundamentals	P.	163
Tool	P.	172
Removing & Installing Body		
Components		
Battery	P.	173
Left Engine Side Cover	P.	174
Side Cover	P.	174
Engine Oil	<b></b> P.	175
Coolant	P.	176
Final Drive Oil	. P.	177

Brakes	<b>.</b> Ρ.	178
Side Stand	Ρ.	181
Clutch	Ρ.	182
Throttle	Ρ.	183
Other Adjustments	Ρ.	184
Clutch and Brake Levers	Ρ.	184
Electrical Adjustable Suspension		
GL1800/DA	Ρ.	185
Rear Suspension GL1800B/BD	Ρ.	185
Other Replacement	Ρ.	186
Honda SMART Key Battery	Ρ.	186

#### Importance of Maintenance

#### **Importance of Maintenance**

Keeping your vehicle well-maintained is absolutely essential to your safety and to protect your investment, obtain maximum performance, avoid breakdowns, and reduce air pollution. Maintenance is the owner's responsibility. Be sure to inspect your vehicle before each ride, and perform the periodic checks specified in the Maintenance Schedule. P. 158

#### **A**WARNING

Improperly maintaining your vehicle or failing to correct a problem before you ride can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

#### **Maintenance Safety**

Always read the maintenance instructions before you begin each task, and make sure that you have the tools, parts, and skills required.

We cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Follow these guidelines when performing maintenance.

- Stop the engine and turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off).
- Place your vehicle on a firm, level surface using the side stand, centre stand (GL1800/DA) or a maintenance stand to provide support.
- Allow the engine, muffler, brakes, and other high-temperature parts to cool before servicing as you can get burned.
- Run the engine only when instructed, and do so in a well-ventilated area.

#### **Maintenance Schedule**

The maintenance schedule specifies the maintenance requirements necessary to ensure safe, dependable performance, and proper emission control.

Maintenance work should be performed in accordance with Honda's standards and specifications by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your dealer meets all of these requirements. Keep an accurate record of maintenance to help ensure that your vehicle is properly maintained. Make sure that whomever performs the maintenance completes this record.

Maintenance

158

All scheduled maintenance is considered a normal owner operating cost and will be charged to you by your dealer. Retain all receipts. If you sell the vehicle, these receipts should be transferred with the vehicle to the new owner.

Honda recommends that your dealer should road test your vehicle after each periodic maintenance is carried out.

#### European direct sales, UK, Turkey, Australia, New Zealand

٢

Items		Pre-ride		مسعدها	Poqular						
		Check	x 1,000 km	1	12	24	36	48	Annual	Regular	Refer to page
		<b>₽</b> P. 163	x 1,000 mi	0.6	8 16		24	32	Check	Replace	page
Fuel Line	*				1	1	1	1	1		-
Fuel Level											144
Throttle Operation	*	1			1	1	1	1	1		183
Air Cleaner* <sup>2</sup>	X					R		R			-
Crankcase Breather*3					C	C	C	C			-
Spark Plug						ß		ß			-
Valve Clearance	×					1		1			-
Engine Oil				ß	ß	ß	ß	ß	ß		175
Engine Oil Filter				ß		ß		ß			-
Clutch Oil Filter (GL1800BD/DA)				0		0		0			-
Engine Idle Speed	*										-
Radiator Coolant*4								1		3 Years	176
Cooling System	*				1	1	1	1	1		-
Secondary Air Supply System	1							1			-
Evaporative Emission Control System	×					1		1			-

#### Maintenance Level

- $\mathbf{X}$  : Intermediate. We recommend service by your dealer, unless you have the necessary tools and are mechanically skilled. Procedures are provided in an official Honda Shop Manual.
- 💥 : Technical. In the interest of safety, have your vehicle serviced by your dealer.

#### Maintenance Legend

- C : Inspect (clean, adjust, lubricate, or replace, if necessary)
   C : Clean
   Replace



① 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 160 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

-

		Pre-ride									Refer to
Items		Check	x 1,000 km	1	12	24	36	48	Annual Check	Regular Replace	page
		<b>→</b> P. 163	x 1,000 mi	0.6	8	16	24	32	CHECK	Replace	page
Final Drive Oil										3 Years	177
Brake Fluid*4										2 Years	178
Brake Pads Wear								1	1		179
Brake System											163
Brakelight Switch					1	1		1	1		180
Brake Lock Operation (GL1800BD/DA)	*										180
Headlight Aim								1	1		-
Lights/Horn											-
Engine Stop Switch		1									-
Clutch System (GL1800/B)							1	1	1		184
Clutch Fluid*4 (GL1800/B)		1			1	1	1	1	1	2 Years	182
Reverse Operation (GL1800/B)	*										-
Side Stand								1	1		181
Suspension	*										-
Nuts, Bolts, Fasteners	×				1	1	1	1	1		-
Wheels/Tyres	X				1	1	1	1	1		-
Steering Head Bearings	×				1	1	1	1	1		-

#### Notes:

- \*1 : At higher odometer reading, repeat at the frequency interval established here.
- \*2 : Service more frequently when riding in unusually wet or dusty areas.
- \*3 : Service more frequently when riding in rain or at full throttle.
- \*4 : Replacement requires mechanical skill.

Maintenance

#### GCC Countries, South Africa

¢

Items		Pre-ride			Fre	مسيما	Deculer						
		Check	x 1,000 km	1	6	12	18	24	30	36	Annual Check		Refer to page
		<b>⊉</b> P. 163	x 1,000 mi	0.6	4	8	12	16	20	24	CHECK	Replace	page
Fuel Line	*					1		1		1	1		-
Fuel Level													144
Throttle Operation	×	1				1		1		1	1		183
Air Cleaner*2	X						ß			R			-
Crankcase Breather*3					С	С	С	С	С	С			-
Spark Plug								ß					-
Valve Clearance	×							1					-
Engine Oil				ß		ß		ß		ß	ß		175
Engine Oil Filter				ß				ß					-
Clutch Oil Filter (GL1800BD/DA)				0				ß					-
Engine Idle Speed	×							1		1	1		-
Radiator Coolant*4								1		1	1	3 Years	176
Cooling System	×					1		1		1	1		-
Secondary Air Supply System	1							1					-
Evaporative Emission Control System	*							1					_

#### Maintenance Level

- 🔧 : Intermediate. We recommend service by your dealer, unless you have the necessary tools and are mechanically skilled. Procedures are provided in an official Honda Shop Manual.
- 💥 : Technical. In the interest of safety, have your vehicle serviced by your dealer.

#### Maintenance Legend

- C : Inspect (clean, adjust, lubricate, or replace, if necessary)
   C : Clean
   Replace



● 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 162 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

.

		Pre-ride											
Items			x 1,000 km	1	6	12	18	24	30	36	Annual Check	Regular Replace	Refer to page
		<b>∌</b> P. 163	x 1,000 mi	0.6	4	8	12	16	20	24	CHECK	Replace	page
Final Drive Oil												3 Years	177
Brake Fluid*4		1						1	1	1	1	2 Years	178
Brake Pads Wear		1					1	1	1	1	1		179
Brake System								1		1	1		163
Brakelight Switch								1		1	1		180
Brake Lock Operation (GL1800BD/DA)	*												180
Headlight Aim								1		1	1		-
Lights/Horn		1											-
Engine Stop Switch		1											-
Clutch System (GL1800/B)											1		184
Clutch Fluid*4 (GL1800/B)		1							1	1	1	2 Years	182
Reverse Operation (GL1800/B)	×												-
Side Stand		1						1		1	1		181
Suspension	*							1		1	1		-
Nuts, Bolts, Fasteners	*							1		1	1		-
Wheels/Tyres	$\mathbf{X}$	1						1		1	1		-
Steering Head Bearings	×							1		1	1		-

#### Notes:

- \*1 : At higher odometer reading, repeat at the frequency interval established here.
- \*2 : Service more frequently when riding in unusually wet or dusty areas.
- \*3 : Service more frequently when riding in rain or at full throttle.
- \*4 : Replacement requires mechanical skill.

Maintenance

#### **Maintenance Fundamentals**

#### **Pre-ride Inspection**

To ensure safety, it is your responsibility to perform a pre-ride inspection and make sure that any problem you find is corrected. A pre-ride inspection is a must, not only for safety, but because having a breakdown, or even a flat tyre, can be a major inconvenience. Check the following items before you get on your vehicle:

- Fuel level Fill fuel tank when necessary.
   ▶ P. 144
- Throttle Check for smooth opening and full closing in all steering positions.
   P 183
- Engine oil level Add engine oil if necessary. Check for leaks. ➡ P. 175
- Coolant level Add coolant if required. Check for leaks. ♥ P. 176
- Brakes Check operation; Front and Rear: check brake fluid level and pads wear. ≥ P. 178, 179

- Lights and horn Check that lights, indicators and horn function properly.
- Engine stop switch Check for proper function. ▶ P. 58
- GL1800/B Clutch Check clutch fluid level. ➡ P. 182
- Side stand ignition cut-off system -Check for proper function. ▶ P. 181
- Wheels and tyres Check condition, air pressure and adjust if necessary. ▶ P. 169

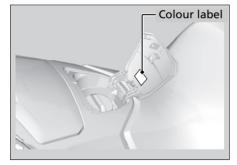
Maintenance

**Maintenance Fundamentals** 

#### **Replacing Parts**

#### Except II GS/III GS/V GS/VI GS type

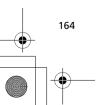
Always use Honda Genuine Parts or their equivalents to ensure reliability and safety. When ordering coloured components, specify the model name, colour and code mentioned on the colour label. The colour label is attached on the reverse side of the fuel lid.  $\blacksquare$  P. 144

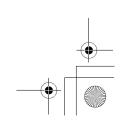


#### **AWARNING**

Installing non-Honda parts may make your vehicle unsafe and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use Honda Genuine Parts or equivalents that have been designed and approved for your vehicle.





#### Battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free type battery. You do not have to check the battery electrolyte level or add distilled water. Clean the battery terminals if they become dirty or corroded. Do not remove the battery cap seals. There is no need to remove the cap when charging.

#### NOTICE

Your battery is a maintenance-free type and can be permanently damaged if the cap strip is removed.

X

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for proper battery disposal instruction.

#### What to do in an emergency

If any of the following occur, immediately see your doctor.

- Electrolyte splashes into your eyes:
  - Wash your eyes repeatedly with cool water for at least 15 minutes. Using water under pressure can damage your eyes.
- Electrolyte splashes onto your skin:
  - ► Remove affected clothing and wash your skin thoroughly using water.
- Electrolyte splashes into your mouth:
  - Rinse mouth thoroughly with water, and do not swallow.

#### **A**WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled mechanic do the battery servicing.

continued 16





**Maintenance Fundamentals** 

#### Cleaning the Battery Terminals

- 1. Remove the battery. ₽ P. 173
- If the terminals are starting to corrode and are coated with a white substance, wash with warm water and wipe clean.
- **3.** If the terminals are heavily corroded, clean and polish the terminals with a wire brush or sandpaper. Wear safety glasses.



4. After cleaning, reinstall the battery.

The battery has a limited life span. Consult your dealer about when you should replace the battery. Always replace the battery with another maintenance-free battery of the same type.

#### NOTICE

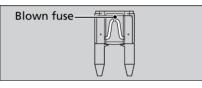
Installing non-Honda electrical accessories can overload the electrical system, discharging the battery and possibly damaging the system.

#### Fuses

Fuses protect the electrical circuits on your vehicle. If something electrical on your vehicle stops working, check for and replace any blown fuses. 
■ P. 216

#### Inspecting and Replacing Fuses

Turn the ignition switch to O (Off) to remove and inspect fuses. If a fuse is blown, replace with a fuse of the same rating. For fuse ratings, see "Specifications."  $\blacksquare$  P. 253, 255



#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chance of damage to the electrical system.

If a fuse fails repeatedly, you likely have an electrical fault. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

#### **Engine Oil**

Engine oil consumption varies and oil quality deteriorates according to riding conditions and time elapsed.

Check the engine oil level regularly, and add the recommended engine oil if necessary. Dirty oil or old oil should be changed as soon as possible.

#### Selecting the Engine Oil

For recommended engine oil, see "Specifications." ■ P. 253, 255

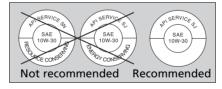
If you use non-Honda engine oil, check the label to make sure that the oil satisfies all of the following standards:

- JASO T 903 standard\*1: MA
- SAE standard\*2: 10W-30
- API classification\*3: SG or higher

\*1. The JASO T 903 standard is an index for engine oils for 4-stroke vehicle engines. There are two classes: MA and MB. For example, the following label shows the MA classification.

\*2. The SAE standard grades oils by their viscosity.

\*<sup>3.</sup> The API classification specifies the quality and performance rating of engine oils. Use SG or higher oils, excluding oils marked as "Energy Conserving" or "Resource Conserving" on the circular API service symbol.



Maintenance Fundamentals

#### Brake Fluid (Clutch Fluid)

Do not add or replace brake fluid, except in an emergency. Use only fresh brake fluid from a sealed container. If you do add fluid, have the brake and clutch system serviced by your dealer as soon as possible.

#### NOTICE

Brake fluid can damage plastic and painted surfaces. Wipe up spills immediately and wash thoroughly.

#### Recommended brake fluid:

Honda DOT 4 Brake Fluid or equivalent



#### **Maintenance Fundamentals**

#### **Final Drive Oil**

**Recommended final drive oil:** Hypoid gear oil SAE 80

#### **Recommended Coolant**

Pro Honda HP Coolant is a pre-mixed solution of antifreeze and distilled water.

#### **Concentration:**

50% antifreeze and 50% distilled water

A concentration of antifreeze below 40% will not provide proper corrosion and cold temperature protection.

A concentration of up to 60% will provide better protection in colder climates.

#### NOTICE

Using coolant not specified for aluminium engines or tap/mineral water can cause corrosion.

#### **Crankcase Breather**

Service more frequently when riding in rain, at full throttle, or after the vehicle is washed or overturned. Service if the deposit level can be seen in the transparent section of the drain tube.

If the drain tube overflows, the air filter may become contaminated with engine oil causing poor engine performance.



#### Tyres (Inspecting/Replacing)

#### Checking the Air Pressure

Even though your vehicle is equipped with tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS), visually inspect your tyres and use an air pressure gauge to measure the air pressure at least once a month or any time you think the tyres look low. Always check air pressure when your tyres are cold.

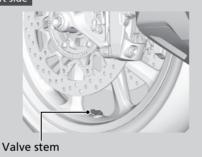
#### GL1800/DA

Do not adjust tyre pressure using the values indicated on the tyre pressure gauge of the INFO 1 display.

The tyre pressure values indicated on the tyre pressure gauge of the INFO 1 display may not match actual values, because the tyre pressure gauge indication is not updated instantly and is updated only at a certain period.

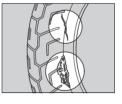
Even if the direction of the valve stem is changed, do not return it to the original position. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.





#### Inspecting for Damage

Inspect the tyres for cuts, slits, or cracks that exposes fabric or cords, or nails or other foreign objects embedded in the side of the

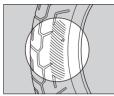


tyre or the tread. Also inspect for any unusual bumps or bulges in the side walls of the tyres.

#### Maintenance Fundamentals

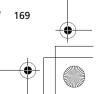
#### Inspecting for Abnormal Wear

Inspect the tyres for signs of abnormal wear on the contact surface.





continued 169

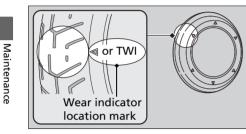


Maintenance Fundamentals

#### Inspecting Tread Depth

Inspect the tread wear indicators. If they become visible, replace the tyres immediately.

For safe riding, you should replace the tyres when the minimum tread depth is reached.



#### **AWARNING**

Riding on tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

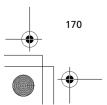
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyres inflation and maintenance.

#### Germany

German law prohibits use of tyres whose tread depth is less than 1.6 mm.

Have your tyres replaced by your dealer. For recommended tyres, air pressure and minimum tread depth, see "Specifications." ➡ P. 252, 254 Follow these guidelines whenever you replace tyres.

- Use the recommended tyres or equivalents of the same size, construction, speed rating, and load range.
- Have the wheel balanced with Honda Genuine balance weights or equivalent after the tyre is installed.
- Do not install a tube inside a tubeless tyre on this vehicle. Excessive heat build-up can cause the tube to burst.
- Use only tubeless tyres on this vehicle. The rims are designed for tubeless tyres, and during hard acceleration or braking, a tube-type tyre could slip on the rim and cause the tyre to rapidly deflate.



21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 171 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

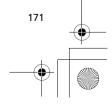
Maintenance Fundamentals

• Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. Not using TPMS specific wheels can cause an air leak, a tyre pressure monitoring system failure, or both.

#### **AWARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can adversely affect handling and stability, and can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in this owner's manual.



#### Tool

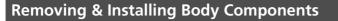
The tool kit is stored in the left saddlebag. ▶ P. 145

You can perform some roadside repairs, minor adjustments and parts replacement with the provided tools.

- No.2 Phillips screwdriver
- No.2 Screwdriver
- Screwdriver handle
- 8 mm Open end wrench
- 10 x 12 mm Open end wrench
- 14 x 17 mm Open end wrench
- 10 x 12 mm Box end wrench
- 14 x 17 mm Box end wrench
- Spark plug wrench
- 5 mm Hex wrench
- 6 mm Hex wrench
- Pliers

Maintenance

- 10 mm Box wrench
- 0.7 mm Feeler gauge



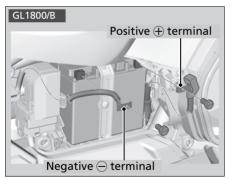
#### Battery

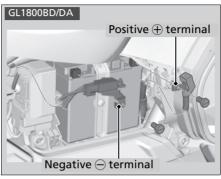
#### Removal

Make sure the ignition switch is turned to  $\mathbf{O}$  (Off).

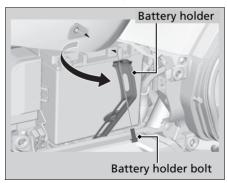
After turning the ignition switch to O (Off), wait more than 60 seconds and then remove the negative cable of the battery. Because the electrical system may not function correctly.

- 1. Remove the left side cover. ₽ P. 174
- **2.** Disconnect the negative ⊖ terminal from the battery.
- **3.** Disconnect the positive  $\oplus$  terminal from the battery.

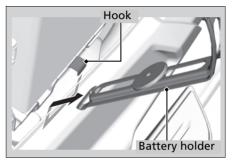




- **4.** Remove the battery holder bolt.
- **5.** Swing the battery holder as shown to avoid interference against the seat.



- **6.** Remove the battery holder from the hook.
- **7.** Remove the battery taking care not to drop the terminal nuts.







Removing & Installing Body Components Left Engine Side Cover

#### Installation

Maintenance

174

Install the parts in the reverse order of removal. Always connect the positive  $\oplus$  terminal first. Make sure that bolts and nuts are tight.

Make sure the clock information is correct after the battery is reconnected.  $\blacktriangleright$  P. 85

For proper handling of the battery, see "Maintenance Fundamentals." DP. 165 "Battery Goes Dead." DP. 215

#### Left Engine Side Cover

# Bosses Bosses Left engine side cover

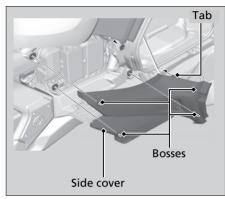
#### Removal

- **1.** Release the bosses from the grommets.
- **2.** Remove the left engine side cover.

#### Installation

Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

Side Cover



The right and left side cover can be removed in the same way.

#### Removal

- 1. Open the saddlebag. ₽ P. 145
- 2. Remove the bosses.
- **3.** Release the tab from the saddlebag cover.
- 4. Remove the side cover.

#### Installation

Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 175 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

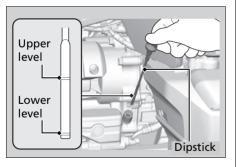
#### **Engine Oil**

#### **Checking the Engine Oil**

#### GL1800BD/DA

Check the engine oil with the Idling Stop system disabled. **⊇** P. 67

- 1. If the engine is cold, idle the engine for 3 to 5 minutes.
- 2. Turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off) and wait for 2 to 3 minutes.
- **3.** Place your vehicle in an upright position on a firm, level surface.
- **4.** Remove the dipstick and wipe it clean.
- **5.** Insert the dipstick until it seats, but don't screw it in.

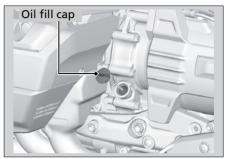


- **6.** Check that the oil level is between the upper level and lower level marks on the dipstick.
- 7. Securely install the dipstick.

#### Adding Engine Oil

If the engine oil is below or near the lower level mark, add the recommended engine oil. ■ P. 167, 253, 255

- Remove the oil fill cap. Add the recommended oil until it reaches the upper level mark.
  - Place your vehicle in an upright position on a firm, level surface when checking the oil level.
  - Do not overfill above the upper level mark.
  - Make sure no foreign objects enter the oil filler opening.
  - ► Wipe up any spills immediately.



2. Securely reinstall the oil fill cap.

#### NOTICE

Overfilling with oil or operating with insufficient oil can cause damage to your engine. Do not mix different brands and grades of oil. They may affect lubrication and clutch operation.

For the recommended oil and oil selection guidelines, see "Maintenance Fundamentals." ▶ P. 167 Maintenance

#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 176 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Coolant

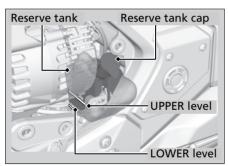
Maintenance

176

#### **Checking the Coolant**

Check the coolant level in the reserve tank while the engine is cold.

- **1.** Place your vehicle on a firm, level surface.
- 2. Remove the left engine side cover. ⇒ P. 174
- **3.** Hold your vehicle in an upright position.
- **4.** Check that the coolant level is between the UPPER level and LOWER level marks in the reserve tank.



If the coolant level is dropping noticeably or the reserve tank is empty, you likely have a serious leak. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

#### **Adding Coolant**

If the coolant level is below the LOWER level mark, add the recommended coolant (DP. 168) until the level reaches the UPPER level mark.

Add fluid only from the reserve tank cap and do not remove radiator cap.

- Remove the left engine side cover.
   ₽. 174
- **2.** Remove the reserve tank cap and add fluid while monitoring the coolant level.
  - Do not overfill above the UPPER level mark.
  - Make sure no foreign objects enter the reserve tank opening.
- **3.** Securely reinstall the reserve tank cap.
- 4. Install the left engine side cover.

### AWARNING

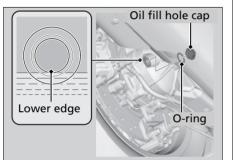
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, potentially scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

#### **Final Drive Oil**

#### **Checking the Final Drive Oil**

- **1.** Hold the vehicle upright on firm level ground.
- 2. Remove the oil fill hole cap and O-ring.
- **3.** Check the oil level. It should be flush with the lower edge of the oil fill hole.



#### Adding Final Drive Oil

If the final drive oil level is low, check for oil leaks. Add the recommended final drive oil (DP. 168) until it reaches the lower edge of the opening.

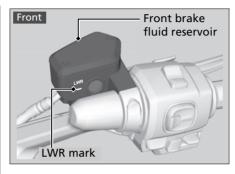




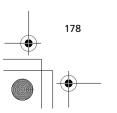
### Brakes

### **Checking Brake Fluid**

- **1.** Place your vehicle in an upright position on a firm, level surface.
- **2.** Check that the brake fluid reservoir is horizontal and that the fluid level is above the LWR mark.



Rear brake fluid reservoir If the brake fluid level in either reservoir is below the LWR mark or the brake lever and pedal freeplay becomes excessive, inspect the brake pads for wear. If the brake pads are not worn, you most likely have a leak. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.





Brakes Inspecting the Brake Pads

Inspecting the Brake Pads

Check the condition of the brake pad wear indicators.

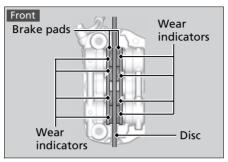
#### Front

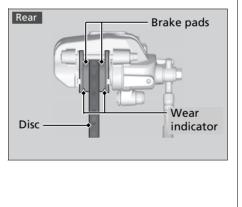
The pads need to be replaced if a brake pad is worn to the bottom of the indicator.

#### Rear

The pads need to be replaced if a brake pad is worn to the indicator.

- **1.** Front Inspect the brake pads from in front of the brake caliper.
  - Always inspect both left and right brake calipers.
- 2. Rear Inspect the brake pads from below the brake caliper.

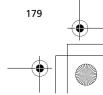




If necessary have the pads replaced by your dealer.

Always replace both left and right brake pads at the same time.





<u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830.book 180 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Brakes > Checking the Parking Brake

### Checking the Parking Brake

#### GL1800BD/DA

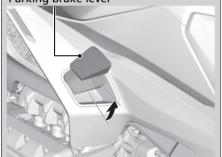
Maintenance

180

Place your vehicle on a firm, level surface. Stop the engine and push your vehicle while set the parking brake to check the efficacy of the parking brake.

If the efficacy of the parking brake becomes weak, have the brake adjusted by your dealer.

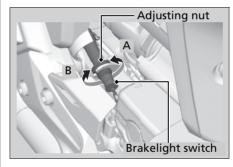
#### Parking brake lever



### Adjusting the Brakelight Switch

Check the operation of the brakelight switch.

Hold the brakelight switch and turn the adjusting nut in the direction A if the switch operates too late, or turn the nut in the direction B if the switch operates too soon.

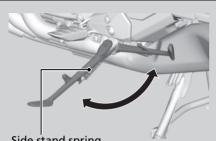




#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 181 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### Side Stand

### **Checking the Side Stand**



#### Side stand spring

- 1. Check that the side stand operates smoothly. If the side stand is stiff or squeaky, clean the pivot area and lubricate the pivot bolt with clean grease.
- **2.** Check the spring for damage or loss of tension.

#### **3.** GL1800/B

Sit on the vehicle, shift the transmission to Neutral, and raise the side stand.

#### GL1800BD/DA

Sit on the vehicle and raise the side stand.

#### **4.** GL1800/B

Start the engine, pull the clutch lever in, and shift the transmission into gear.

#### GL1800BD/DA

Start the engine and press the D side of N-D switch to switch the transmission into AT MODE (D).

**5.** Lower the side stand all the way. The engine should stop as you lower the side stand. If the engine doesn't stop, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

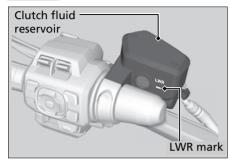
Maintenance

#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 182 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### Clutch

### **Checking Clutch Fluid**

#### GL1800/B



- **1.** Place your vehicle in an upright position on a firm, level surface.
- **2.** Check that the clutch fluid reservoir is horizontal and that the fluid level is above the LWR mark.

If the fluid level is low or if you find fluid leaks, or deterioration or cracks in the hoses and fittings, have the clutch system serviced by your dealer.

Maintenance

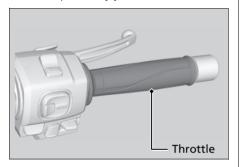
#### <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 183 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### Throttle

۲

### **Checking the Throttle**

With the engine off, check that the throttle rotates smoothly from fully closed to fully open. If the throttle does not move smoothly, close automatically, have the vehicle inspected by your dealer.





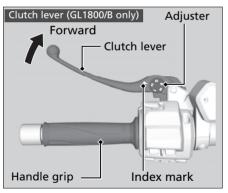
### **Other Adjustments**

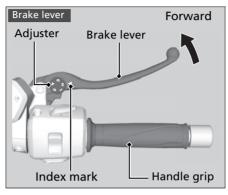
# Adjusting the Clutch and Brake Levers

You can adjust the distances between the tip of the clutch lever (GL1800/B) and handle grip, and between the tip of the brake lever and handle grip.

### Adjustment method

Turn the adjuster until the numbers align with the index mark while pushing the lever forward in the desired position.





After adjustment, check that the lever operates correctly before riding.

#### NOTICE

Do not turn the adjuster beyond its natural limit.



Other Adjustments Selecting the Electrical Adjustable Suspension

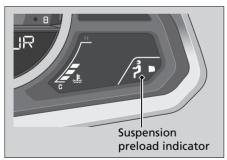
### Selecting the Electrical **Adjustable Suspension**

#### GL1800/DA

The electrical adjustable suspension allows the preload of the rear suspension to be adjusted in four levels according to riding and load conditions.

Preload can be adjusted on the multiinformation display. ₽ P. 34

When the riding mode is changed, front and rear suspension damping is automatically adjusted to a setting corresponding to the mode. ₽ P. 136



### NOTICE

The front and rear shock absorber damper units contain high pressure nitrogen gas. Do not attempt to disassemble, service, or improperly dispose of the damper. See your dealer.

### Adjusting the Rear **Suspension**

#### GL1800B/BD

You can adjust the spring preload of the rear suspension to suit the load or the road surface.

#### NOTICE

Do not turn the adjuster beyond its limits.

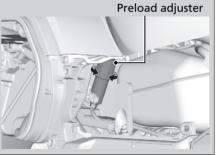
#### NOTICE

The rear shock absorber damper unit contains high pressure nitrogen gas. Do not attempt to disassemble, service, or improperly dispose of the damper. See your dealer.

### Spring Preload

Remove the right side cover. ₽ P. 174 Turn the adjuster clockwise to increase spring preload (hard), or turn the adjuster counterclockwise to decrease spring preload (soft).

To set the standard position, turn the adjuster counterclockwise until it will no longer turn (lightly seat), and then turn the adjuster clockwise until it clicks. This click is position 0 (minimum setting). The standard position is 9 clicks from the minimum setting (total setting: 33 clicks).



185



### **Other Replacement**

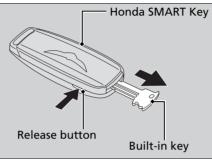
### Replacing the Honda SMART Key Battery

If the Honda SMART Key indicator flashes 5 times when the ignition switch is turned to (On), the low battery pop-up information appears, or the operating range becomes unstable, replace the battery as soon as possible.

We recommend to see your dealer for this service.

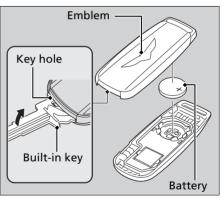
Battery type: CR2032

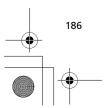
**1.** Push the release button and remove the built-in key from the Honda SMART Key.



**2.** Slightly insert the built-in key from the opposite side into the key hole.

- **3.** With the emblem upward, separate the Honda SMART Key by prying the built-in key as shown in the illustration.
  - ► Do not pry the built-in key forcibly.
  - ► Do not touch the circuit or terminal. This may cause problems.
  - Be careful to avoid scratching the waterproof covering or allowing dust to enter.
  - Do not forcibly dismantle the Honda SMART Key body.





- **4.** Replace the old battery with a new one with the positive ⊕ side facing up.
- **5.** Assemble the parts in the reverse order of disassembly.

#### **Other Replacement** Replacing the Honda SMART Key Battery

### **A**WARNING

## Chemical Burn Hazard: do not swallow battery.

If swallowed, the battery can cause severe internal burns and even death.

- Keep battery away from children and battery compartment securely closed.
- If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children.
- Immediately seek medical attention if a child may have swallowed battery.

**CAUTION**: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

**CAUTION**: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

**CAUTION**: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

**CAUTION**: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.

187 -(

## Troubleshooting

Engine Will Not Start	Ρ.	189
<b>Overheating (High coolant temperatu</b>	re	
indicator is on)	Ρ.	190
Warning Indicators On or Flashing	Ρ.	191
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	Ρ.	191
PGM-FI (Programmed Fuel Injection)		
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)	Ρ.	191
Combined ABS Indicator	Ρ.	191
Torque Control Indicator		
GL1800/DA	Ρ.	192
Honda SMART Key Indicator	Ρ.	192
Clutch Temperature Indicator		
GI 1800BD/DA	Ρ.	193

Low Tyre Pressure Indicator P. 193
TPMS Indicator P. 194
AIRBAG Indicator GL1800DA P. 194
Other Warning Indications P. 195
Fuel Gauge Failure Indication P. 195
Handle Grip Heater Failure Indication P. 195
Seat Heaters Failure Indication
GL1800/DA P. 196
Coolant Temperature Gauge Failure Indication P. 196
If the "-" is Blinking in the Gear Position Indicator
While Riding (GL1800BD/DA) P. 197
When the Idling Stop System Does Not Operate
Properly (GL1800BD/DA) P. 198

when the nonua swakt key system	υ	Jes
Not Operate Properly	Ρ.	200
Activating the Electrical System in an		
Emergency	Ρ.	201
If the Saddlebags or Travel Trunk Wo	n't	
Open	Ρ.	203
Tyre Puncture	Ρ.	205
Audio System Trouble	Ρ.	206
Electrical Trouble	P.	215
Battery Goes Dead	Ρ.	215
Burned-out Light Bulb	. P.	215
Blown Fuse	. P.	216

#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 189 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### **Engine Will Not Start**

## Starter Operates But Engine Does Not Start

Check the following items:

- Check the correct engine starting sequence ≥ P. 128
- Check that there is petrol in the fuel tank
- Check if the PGM-FI (Programmed Fuel Injection) Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is on
  - If the indicator lamp is on, contact your dealer as soon as possible.

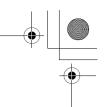
### **Starter Does Not Operate**

Check the following items:

- Check the correct engine starting sequence ≥ P. 128
- Check for a blown fuse ₽ P. 216
- Check for a loose battery connection
   (≥ P. 173) or battery terminal corrosion
   (≥ P. 165)
- Check the condition of the battery ▶ P. 215

If the problem continues, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

Troubleshooting



### Overheating (High coolant temperature indicator is on)

The engine is overheating when the following occurs:

- High coolant temperature indicator comes on.
- The 6th (H) segment flashes in the coolant temperature gauge.
- Acceleration becomes sluggish.

If this occurs, pull safely to the side of the road and perform the following procedure. Extended fast idling may cause the high coolant temperature indicator to come on. Also the 6th (H) segment will flash.

#### NOTICE

Continuing to ride with an overheated engine can cause serious damage to the engine.

1. Stop the engine, and then turn the ignition switch to ↓ (On). ■ P. 55

 Check that the radiator fan is operating, and then turn the ignition switch to O (Off).

#### If the fan is not operating:

Suspect a fault. Do not start the engine. Transport your vehicle to your dealer. If the fan is operating:

Allow the engine to cool with the ignition switch turned to O (Off).

3. After the engine has cooled, inspect the radiator hose and check if there is a leak.▶ P. 176

#### If there is a leak:

Do not start the engine. Transport your vehicle to your dealer.

- 4. Check the coolant level in the reserve tank. ≥ P. 176
  - Add coolant as necessary.
- **5.** If 1 4 check normal, you may continue riding, but closely monitor the coolant temperature gauge.

190

Troubleshooting



### Low Oil Pressure Indicator

If the low oil pressure indicator comes on, pull safely to the side of the road and stop the engine.

#### NOTICE

Continuing to ride with low oil pressure can cause serious damage to the engine.

- Check the engine oil level, and add oil as necessary. 
   P. 175
- 2. Start the engine.
  - Only continue riding if the low oil pressure indicator goes off.

Rapid acceleration may momentarily cause the low oil pressure indicator to come on, especially if the oil is at or near the low level.

If the low oil pressure indicator stays on when the oil level is at the proper level, stop the engine and contact your dealer. If the engine oil level goes down rapidly, your vehicle may have a leak or another serious problem. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

### PGM-FI (Programmed Fuel Injection) Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

#### II GS/III GS/ VGS/VI GS type

If the indicator comes on while riding, you may have a serious problem with the PGM-FI system. Reduce speed and have your vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible.

#### Except II GS/III GS/ VGS/VI GS type Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

What to do when the indicator lamp comes on Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

#### What to do when the indicator lamp blinks Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes with the engine stopped until it cools.

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

#### NOTICE

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (31 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

### **Combined ABS Indicator**

If the Combined ABS indicator operates in one of the following ways, your brakes will continue to work as a conventional system, but without the Combined ABS function. Reduce your speed and have your vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible.

- Indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to (On)
- Indicator does not go off at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph)
- Indicator comes on or starts flashing while riding

The combined ABS indicator may flash if:

- The front wheel leaves the ground for 1 second or more
- You turn the rear wheel while your vehicle is lifted off the ground.

This is normal but the Combined ABS is not in operation. To activate the system again, turn the ignition switch to O (Off), and then to I (On) again.







Warning Indicators On or Flashing 
Torque Control Indicator

### **Torque Control Indicator**

#### GL1800/DA

If the indicator operates in one of the following ways, you may have a serious problem with the Torque Control. Reduce your speed and have your vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible.

- Indicator comes on while riding.
- Indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned on.
- Indicator does not go off at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph).

Even when the Torque Control indicator is on, your vehicle will have normal riding ability without Torque Control function.

When the indicator comes on while the Torque Control is in operation, you will have to completely close the throttle to regain normal riding ability.

The Torque Control indicator may come on if you rotate the rear wheel while your vehicle is lifted off the ground. In this case, turn the ignition switch to  $\bigcirc$  (Off) and then to  $\parallel$  (On) again. The Torque Control indicator will go off after your speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph).

### Honda SMART Key Indicator

If the Honda SMART Key Indicator Flashes 5 times When the Ignition Switch is Turned to | (On) Replacing the Honda SMART Key Battery ➡ P. 186

### When the Honda SMART Key Indicator is Flashing While the Electrical System is On

The Honda SMART Key indicator flashes when communication between your vehicle and Honda SMART Key stops after turning on the ignition switch. It is probably caused by the following:

- Strong radio waves or noise are affecting the system
- You lost the Honda SMART Key while riding

However, this does not affect the operation of your vehicle until the ignition switch turned to  $\mathbf{O}$  (Off).

You may not be able to turn off the electrical system when losing the Honda SMART Key while riding, or if the battery is low, or because the system is affected by strong radio waves or noise. If this occurs, turn the ignition switch counterclockwise and hold it until the electrical system shut off.

If you do not have the Honda SMART Key, the electrical system can be activated by means of emergency procedures. ■ P. 201



Troubleshooting

Warning Indicators On or Flashing 
Clutch Temperature Indicator

#### If the low tyre pressure indicator does not **Clutch Temperature Indicator** Low Tyre Pressure Indicator go off after inflating the tyres to the If the low tyre pressure indicator flashes. specified values, have your dealer to check GL1800BD/DA The clutch temperature indicator flashes if check your tyres as soon as possible. the system as soon as possible. the clutch temperature becomes unusually If the low tyre pressure indicator lights constantly, one or more of your tyres is hiah. Riding on an underinflated tyre causes the If the indicator flashes, pull safely to the significantly underinflated. You should stop tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. and check your tyres as soon as possible. side of the road and shift the transmission to neutral, then idle the engine. For more information on temporary repair, Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency When the indicator goes off, riding can be refer to "Emergency Repair Using a Tyre and tyre tread life, and may affect the Repair Kit." ₽ P. 205 restarted vehicle's handling and stopping ability. If this occurs frequently, contact your dealer. Check the air pressure when the tyres are Because tyre pressure varies by cold (This means the vehicle has been temperature and other conditions, the low parked for at least 3 hours.) tyre pressure indicator may turn on NOTICE Adjust to the recommended tyre pressures unexpectedly. Continuing to ride with high clutch temperature can if necessary. ▶ P. 252, 254 cause serious damage to the clutch. Please note that the TPMS is not a When the low tyre pressure indicator substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and flashes or comes on, but you continue to it is the rider's responsibility to maintain ride, the low tyre pressure indicator will go correct tyre pressure, even if underoff in some cases. It is still necessary to inflation has not reached the level of check the air pressures of both tyres after turning on the low tyre pressure indicator. the tyres cool because air in the tyres is expanded with heat. For example, if you check and fill your tyres in a warm area, then ride in extremely cold weather, the tyre pressure will be lower continued

Troubleshooting

#### Warning Indicators On or Flashing TPMS Indicator

than measured and could be underinflated and cause the low tyre pressure indicator to turn on. Or, if you check and adjust your tyre pressure in cooler conditions, and ride into extremely hot conditions, the tyre may become overinflated. However, the low tyre pressure indicator will not turn on if the tyres are overinflated.

### **TPMS Indicator**

The TPMS indicator comes on if there is a problem with the tyre pressure monitoring system.

If this occurs, the system will shut off and no longer monitor tyre pressure.

Have the system checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

Also the TPMS indicator may light for the following reasons:

- Interference of other electronic devices by using the same radio frequency.
- Using replacement wheels not equipped with tyre pressure sensors.

### **AIRBAG Indicator**

#### GL1800DA

The AIRBAG indicator comes on if there is a problem with the airbag system.

If the indicator does not come on, or comes and stays on when the ignition switch is turned on, or comes on while you are riding, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible as the airbag may not deploy when it could help save your life.

### **AWARNING**

Ignoring the airbag indicator can result in serious injury or death in a severe frontal impact if the airbag system does not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the airbag indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

### Hill Start Assist (HSA) Indicator

If the Hill start assist (HSA) indicator comes on in amber in one of the following ways, you may have a serious problem with the HSA system.

Reduce speed and have your vehicle inspected by your dealer as soon as possible.

- Indicator comes on in amber while riding.
- Indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to (On).
- Indicator does not go off at speeds above 5 km/h (3 mph).
- Even when the Hill start assist (HSA) indicator comes on in amber, your vehicle will have normal riding ability without HSA function.

If the Hill start assist (HSA) indicator comes on in white while stopping the vehicle, this is normal and the HSA is working properly.

194

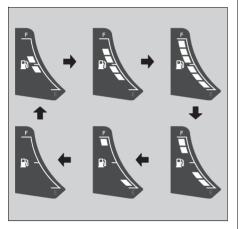
Troubleshooting

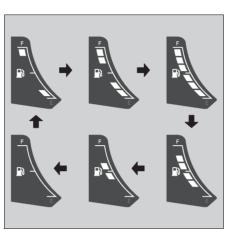
### **Other Warning Indications**

### Fuel Gauge Failure Indication

If the fuel system has an error, the fuel gauge segments will be displayed as shown in the illustration.

If this occurs, see your dealer as soon as possible.





### Handle Grip Heater Failure Indication

If the handle grip heater system has an error, the handle grip heater indicator will blink.

If this occurs, see your dealer as soon as possible.

Troubleshooting

Other Warning Indications Indication

### Seat Heaters Failure Indication

#### GL1800/DA

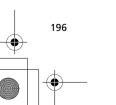
If the seat heater system has an error, the seat heater indicator will blink. If this occurs, see your dealer as soon as possible.

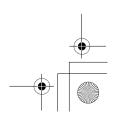
# Coolant Temperature Gauge Failure Indication

If the cooling system has an error, all segments will blink as shown in the illustration. If this occurs, see your dealer as soon as possible.









#### → <u>21</u> GL1800 32MKC830. book 197 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### If the "-" is Blinking in the Gear Position Indicator While Riding (GL1800BD/DA)

If the "-" is blinking in the gear position indicator while riding, you may have a serious problem with the Dual Clutch Transmission system.

Park your vehicle in a safe place and have your vehicle inspected by dealer immediately.

It may be possible to ride your vehicle by following the steps below.

- **1.** Turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off).
- **2.** Turn the ignition switch to (On) and start the engine.

#### If you cannot start the engine:

Turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off) and move the vehicle back and forth slightly (to disengage the gears). Turn the ignition switch to **I** (On) again and start the engine.

#### If you still cannot start the engine:

Start the engine while applying the brake lever or pressing the brake pedal.

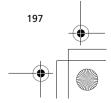
#### If you can shift from N to D range:

When a gear position is shown in the gear position indicator, you can ride in that gear. Take your vehicle to your dealer riding at a safe speed.

#### If you can't shift from N to D range and

the "-" is blinking: Possible damage to the DCT is preventing you from riding. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

**Troubleshooting** 





When the Idling Stop indicator does not come on, perform the followings.

#### If the Idling Stop system is off:

Press the start/Idling Stop button or set the Idling Stop system at the multi-information display.

#### If the engine is cold:

Warm up the engine. The Idling Stop system does not operate when the engine is cold.

## If you did not ride the vehicle after engine starts:

Ride the vehicle at speeds of over 10 km/h (6 mph). The Idling Stop system does not operate until you ride once. If PGM-FI malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) lights: When the PGM-FI malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) lights, the Idling Stop system does not operate for protection of the engine. See your dealer.

#### If the battery voltage is low:

When the Idling Stop System Does Not Operate Properly (GL1800BD/DA)

Ride the vehicle for a while, then stop the engine and then restart the engine, referring to the correct engine starting procedure (P P. 128). The Idling Stop system may not operate if the battery voltage is low. If this occurs frequently, contact your dealer.

#### If the temperature of the battery is cold:

Ride the vehicle for a while. The Idling Stop system does not operate when the battery is cold.

### Engine is Not Stopped by the Idling Stop System While the Idling Stop Indicator is On

When the engine is not stopped by Idling Stop system while the Idling Stop indicator is on, perform the following.

#### If the vehicle does not stop completely:

Stop the vehicle completely. The Idling Stop system operates if the speed is only at 0 km/h (0 mph).

If the throttle is not closed completely: Close the throttle completely.

If the Hill start assist (HSA) is operated: The Idling Stop system does not stop the engine while the HSA is operated.

#### When the transmission is shifted in Neutral:

The Idling Stop system does not stop the engine when the transmission is shifted in Neutral (N side of the N-D switch is pressed).

198

[roubleshooting

When the Idling Stop System Does Not Operate Properly (GL1800BD/DA) > Engine Does Not Start Even If the Throttle is Opened

## Engine Does Not Start Even If the Throttle is Opened

Engine does not start even if the throttle is opened, perform the followings.

#### If the side stand is down:

While the engine is stopped by the Idling Stop system, if you operate the side stand, the flashing Idling Stop indicator changes flashing to off, and the Idling Stop system is cancelled. Restart the engine with the start/ Idling Stop button, referring to the starting procedure (P. 128) for standard engine starting.

#### If the rider does not sit astride the vehicle:

When the rider has not been sitting astride the vehicle for approx. 3 minutes, the ldling Stop indicator changes from flashing to off and you cannot restart the engine, even if you open the throttle.

Restart the engine with the start/ldling Stop button, referring to the starting procedure for standard engine starting.

#### If the start/Idling Stop button is operated:

While the engine is stopping by the Idling Stop system, if you press the start/Idling Stop button, the Idling Stop system will be cancelled.

Restart the engine with the start/Idling Stop button, referring to the starting procedure (
P. 128) for standard engine starting.

If the Idling Stop indicator flashes, but engine does not start even if the throttle is opened, perform the followings.

#### Battery lead is loose:

Check the battery terminals.

Troubleshooting

### When the Honda SMART Key System Does Not Operate Properly

When the Honda SMART Key system does not work properly, perform the following.

- Check that the Honda SMART Key system is activated. Lightly press the ON/OFF button on the Honda SMART Key.
   If the Honda SMART Key LED does not blink 3 times, activate the Honda SMART Key system. P P. 62
   If the Honda SMART Key LED does not respond, replace the battery of the Honda SMART Key. P P. 186
- Check that there is no communication failure in the Honda SMART Key system. The Honda SMART Key system uses lowintensity radio waves. The Honda SMART Key system may not work properly in the following condition:
  - When there are facilities nearby that generate strong radio waves or noise such as TV towers, power stations, radio stations, or airports.
  - When you carry the Honda SMART Key with a laptop or wireless communication device such as a radio or mobile phone.

- When the Honda SMART Key comes into contact with or is covered by metal objects.
- Check that a registered Honda SMART Key is used.

Use a registered Honda SMART Key. The Honda SMART Key system cannot be activated without a registered Honda SMART Key.

• Make sure that you do not use a broken Honda SMART Key.

If you use a broken Honda SMART Key, the Honda SMART Key system cannot be activated. Bring the emergency key and ID tag to your dealer.

• Check the battery condition and battery lead in your vehicle. Check the battery and battery terminals. If the battery is weak, contact your dealer.

If the Honda SMART Key system cannot be activated due to other causes, contact your dealer.

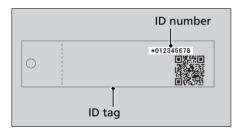


### Activating the Electrical System in an Emergency

The electrical system can be activated by inputting the ID number.

### Set to ID number input mode

- 1. Open the left and right saddlebags by the emergency procedures. 
  P. 203
- **2.** Press and hold the start button for more than 4 seconds.
  - The buzzer sounds and the system enters the ID number input mode.
- 3. Check the ID number on the ID tag.

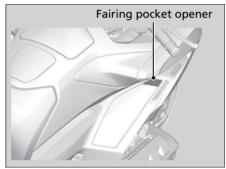


### ID number input

You can input your ID number by pressing the fairing pocket opener and the start button. Input the ID number on the ID tag starting with the digit on the left by pressing the fairing pocket opener. The ID number is input according to the number of times the fairing pocket opener is pressed.

Press the fairing pocket opener the desired number of times, then press the start button to fix the current digit (the buzzer sounds), and input the next digit, and then repeat until all the digits are input.

While inputting the ID number, if the button is not pressed for about 20 seconds, the inputted ID number is cancelled and the system returns to the state before ID number input (the buzzer sounds).

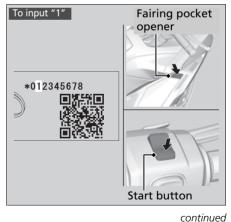


#### Example:

• To input "0", press the start button without pressing the fairing pocket opener, and then input next digit.



• To input "1", press the fairing pocket opener once, and then press the start button to input the next digit.



\_ Troubleshooting

21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 202 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Activating the Electrical System in an Emergency

#### ID number input success:

After the last digit of the ID number is inputted and the start button is pressed, the ID number is authenticated. The steering will be unlocked (if it is locked) and the electrical system activated. You can start the engine.

You can turn off the engine and electrical system and also lock the steering using the ignition switch. To activate the electrical system again, repeat the procedures for ID number input.

#### ID number input failure:

If the ID number is not authenticated after inputting, the steering cannot be unlocked and the electrical system will not activate.

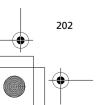
Repeat the procedures for ID number input from the beginning.

#### ID number input cancel

If you input the wrong number, you can cancel ID number input by not pressing the button for about 20 seconds (the buzzer sounds).

Repeat the procedures for ID number input from the beginning.





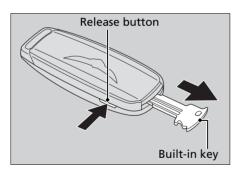
### If the Saddlebags or Travel Trunk Won't Open

The built-in key can be used to open the left saddle bag when the Honda SMART Key battery becomes weak.

If you lose the Honda SMART Key, the left saddlebag can be unlocked using the emergency key. 
P. 221

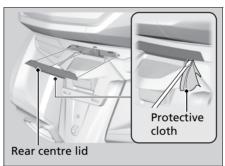
To remove the built-in key, pull it out by pressing the release button on the Honda SMART Key.

To reinstall the built-in key, push the builtin key into the Honda SMART Key until it clicks.



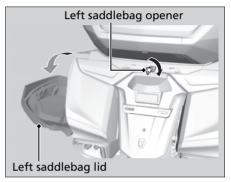
### To Open the Saddlebags Emergency

**1.** Remove the rear centre lid by using a flat head screwdriver covered with a protective cloth.



2. Remove the built-in key from the Honda SMART Key.

**3.** Insert the built-in key or emergency key in the left saddlebag opener and turn it clockwise to open the left saddlebag.

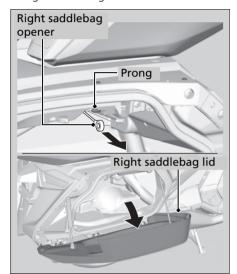


Troubleshooting



If the Saddlebags or Travel Trunk Won't Open ► To Open the Travel Trunk Emergency

**4.** Release the right saddlebag opener from the prong in the left saddlebag. Pull the right saddlebag opener to open the right saddlebag.

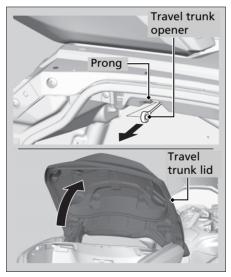


 Install the right saddlebag opener onto the prong before closing the saddlebags.

### To Open the Travel Trunk Emergency

#### GL1800/DA

- Open the left and right saddlebags.
   ▶ P. 203
- 2. Release the travel trunk opener from the prong in the right saddlebag. Pull the travel trunk opener to open the travel trunk.



**3.** Install the travel trunk opener onto the prong before closing the right saddlebag.



### **Tyre Puncture**

Repairing a puncture or removing a wheel requires special tools and technical expertise.

We recommend you have this type of service performed by your dealer. After an emergency repair, always have the tyre inspected/replaced by your dealer.

# Emergency Repair Using a Tyre Repair Kit

If your tyre has a minor puncture, you can make an emergency repair using a tubeless tyre repair kit.

Follow the instructions provided with the emergency tyre repair kit.

Riding your vehicle with a temporary tyre repair is very risky. Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Have the tyre replaced by your dealer as soon as possible.

#### NOTICE

Using a puncture-repairing agent can damage the TPMS sensors, causing the TPMS indicator to turn on. Have your vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

#### NOTICE

Use caution not to damage the TPMS sensor if an internal plug patch must be used to repair the tyre. If you have a tyre professionally repaired at a non-Honda facility, we recommend that you have the work checked by your dealer. TPMS wheels require special handling when changing the tyre. Failure to follow the proper tyre replacement procedure can result in damage to the TPMS sensor.

### **AWARNING**

Riding your vehicle with a temporary tyre repair can be risky. If the temporary repair fails, you can crash and be seriously injured or killed.

If you must ride with a temporary tyre repair, ride slowly and carefully and do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) until the tyre is replaced.



□ <u>21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 206 ページ 2020年10</u>月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

## Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
Unable to pair <i>Bluetooth</i> ® device	Some <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> devices and application software you use may be incompatible with the audio system and/or the operable functions may be limited.
	Check that the audio system and <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device are both in the pairing mode. ■ P. 92, 97
	The audio system may not be properly connected when another <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device is being paired at the same time. Check your surroundings to make sure no other device being paired is present before re-pairing. Presence of a <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device in the vicinity sometimes affects the pairing due to radio wave interference, etc.
	When connecting a <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device, make sure no other <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device readied for pairing is present. Presence of a <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device in the vicinity sometimes affects the pairing due to radio wave interference, etc.
	When you repeatedly fail in pairing, delete the paired device once, then try pairing again. ■ P. 92, 95
	Depending on the <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device and application software you use, it may take some time for the audio system to connect to a device and to start playing an audio file.
Unable to connect <i>Bluetooth</i> ® device	The connection may be temporarily disconnected when starting the engine, which is normal and not a malfunction. The <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device will be reconnected after the engine is started.
	Check that your <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device has been paired. Referring to the instruction manual of your <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device, check that your <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device is in connectable state.

Troubleshooting

Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
Unable to connect <i>Bluetooth</i> ® phone device	Some <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> devices and application software you use may not connect automatically. For connecting, follow the instructions in the instruction manual of your <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device.
	The <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> devices that can be connected at the same time are limited to one <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device and two <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> headsets.
	If the problem continues after the above-described inspection, delete the paired device once, then try pairing again. D P. 92, 95, 97
	The <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> connection cannot be established while launching Apple CarPlay/Android Auto. Quit Apple CarPlay/Android Auto, then try pairing again. ■ P. 92, 95
	While connected to Apple CarPlay/Android Auto, <i>Bluetooth®</i> function is disabled.
Connected, but does not play.	Some <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> devices and application software you use may be incompatible with the audio system and/or audio files may not be played properly. Check the recommended specifications.
	Depending on the <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device and application software you use, an audio file may not play automatically. For playing, follow the instructions in the instruction manual of your <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device.
	Depending on the <i>Bluetooth®</i> device and application software you use, an audio file may not play normally after receiving a telephone call, etc. Check that your <i>Bluetooth®</i> device is in playable state.
Takes some time to start playing after turning the power on or changing the audio mode.	Right after the power is turned on or the audio mode is changed, the audio system may take some time to connect to an audio device and to start playing an audio file. Also, the audio system may not allow any audio control operation while preparing to play an audio file.

Troubleshooting

continued 207

①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 □
 ①
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □

#### Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
Sounds skip Noises mix	Presence of another <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device or a device that emits electromagnetic waves such as communication equipment in the vicinity sometimes affects the communication.
	Due to the characteristics of <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> , though in rare cases, the system operation may become unstable. When it remains unstable, turn off the power to the audio system or the device being used, and then turn it on again.
	The storage location of the <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device sometimes affects the audio system and communication. When sounds skip or noises mix, change the location of the device. For example, when the device is kept in a pocket of clothing sandwiched in between the rider and passenger, the communication may be affected. For <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> antenna locations, refer to Audio System Location. <b>D</b> P. 74 Also, weather, buildings in the vicinity, road conditions, etc. can sometimes affect the communication.
	Depending on the <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device and application software you use, an audio file may not play normally after receiving a telephone call, etc. Change the audio mode (DP P. 77) or turn off the power to the audio system and then turn it on again. If the skipping of sounds or mixing of noises continues, check the status of your <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device.
	If the skipping of sounds or mixing of noises continues, delete the paired device once, then try pairing again. ■ P. 92, 95
	Check the recommended specifications. ₽ P. 91
	Noise sometimes mixes at the place where radio wave is weak.
Audio volume from headset is	Adjust the volume while in the individual modes. ₽ P. 77
small/big.	Check the volume setting of the paired headset.

Troubleshooting

Symptom	Cause/remedy
No or inaccurate display	Depending on the audio device and the audio file, nothing may be displayed or the display may be inaccurate in some cases. Check the information on available tags. P. 107
	When the information in an audio file such as the artist name and track title is in a non-compliant tag format, it may be indicated by "." or no information will be shown.
	Depending on the type of the album art used for the music information of audio files, the album art may not be displayed. The system supports ID3v2 as available tag for album art. Check the album art format of the audio file.
	The system does not support album art display via <i>Bluetooth</i> ® connection.
About USB device	Some USB devices may be incompatible with the audio system and/or their operable functions may be limited.
	When the audio system does not recognize the USB device connected to the USB connector, turn the ignition switch to $O$ (Off) and then turn it on again.
	When a large number of files are stored in the USB device, it sometimes takes a long time before an audio file starts playing. Reduce the number of files in the USB device.
	Check that the audio files stored in the USB device is in a playable file format. ₽ P. 107
USB failure	USB function may be unusable when the system failure occurs. USB connection may recover by turning the ignition switch to <b>O</b> (Off), and then to <b>I</b> (On) again.

Troubleshooting

continued 209

#### Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
	Connected <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> device may be unsupported device. Check the supported <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> version/profiles. ■ P. 91
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> handsfree calling cannot be available.	When the <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> connection is unstable due to surrounding conditions or radio wave conditions, the handsfree calling functions may not be available.
	To use the <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> handsfree calling, a headset connection is necessary. Connect a paired headset.  ■ P. 95
During a call, headset volume is small/big.	Adjust the volume during a call. ■ P. 77
Passenger's headset is no sound.	If [Private mode] is enabled, no sound comes from the passenger's headset. Check [Private mode] setting. ■ P. 99
About Phonebook	Since the phonebook is stored in the system, it may be displayed even when connecting another phone.
	Depending on the connection status, the times displayed in call history on the vehicle side or the phone side may differ.
Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> Handsfree Calling	Depending on your mobile carrier plan, available functions may differ.
	A display delay may occur depending on the number of phone books, call history and music data etc. stored in the connected device.

Troubleshooting



Audio	System	Trouble
-------	--------	---------

Symptom	Cause/remedy
	Connected iPhone may be unsupported model. Check the compatible model with Apple CarPlay. ■ P. 113
	Connected iPhone may be unsupported iOS version. Update the iPhone to the newer version.
	To use Apple CarPlay, a headset connection is necessary. Connect a paired headset. D P. 95
Apple CarPlay cannot be available.	When connecting your iPhone, if it is recognised as iPod, disconnect the USB cable once, enable the Apple CarPlay (2 P. 88), and then reconnect the USB cable again.
	When a mobile network communication is unstable due to surrounding conditions or signal strength conditions, Apple CarPlay functions may not be available.
	When the paired headset connection is broken due to headset battery depletion or communication failure, Apple CarPlay cannot be used until the connection is restored.
	The screen will not switch to Apple CarPlay automatically, other than when the ignition switch is turned to <b>O</b> (Off) with Apple CarPlay is activated.
	Apple CarPlay cannot be available with USB connection via USB 2 connector. Check the USB connection, and then reconnect the USB 1 connector if necessary.
	Some USB cables may be incompatible with Apple CarPlay. Use certified cable to connect the iPhone.
	You have not agreed to enable Apple CarPlay. Reconnect the iPhone and enable to use CarPlay on the disclaimer screen. D P. 114
	Apple CarPlay setting on your iPhone may be disabled. Disconnect iPhone and enable the Apple CarPlay setting on your iPhone.

Troubleshooting



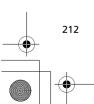
①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 □
 ①
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □

#### Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
	Connected Android phone may be unsupported model. Check the compatible model with Android Auto. D P. 116
	Connected Android phone may be unsupported Android version. Update the Android phone to the newer version.
	To use Android Auto, a headset connection is necessary. Connect a paired headset. D P. 97
Android Auto cannot be available.	When a mobile network communication is unstable due to surrounding conditions or signal strength conditions, Android Auto functions may not be available.
	When the paired headset connection is broken due to headset battery depletion or communication failure, go back to the Home screen, and pair the headset connection again. 2 P. 97
	Android Auto cannot be available with USB connection via USB 2 connector. Check the USB connection, and then reconnect the USB 1 connector if necessary.
	Some USB cables may be incompatible with Android Auto. For Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.
	You have not agreed to enable Android Auto. Reconnect the Android phone and enable to use Android Auto on the disclaimer screen. D P. 117
	Android Auto setting on your Android phone may be disabled. Disconnect Android phone and enable the Android Auto setting on your Android phone.

Troubleshooting

\_\_\_\_\_

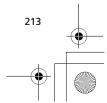


Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
Connected, but does not operate Apply CarPlay/Android Auto.	You cannot operate Apple CarPlay/Android Auto by the centre panel switches/Interface dial while the vehicle is in motion. Operate with the left handlebar switches or park your vehicle in a safe place, then operate.
Some functions of Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto is not available.	Some functions may be limited due to condition of mobile network communication.
Apple CarPlay/Android Auto screen is too dark/bright	Selecting [Day / Night] menu in [Vehicle setting], you can select daytime mode or nighttime mode in the navigation map or an application such as Maps (2 P. 37), also adjust backlight brightness by [Auto dimmer meter illumination] menu in [Vehicle setting] (2 P. 37).
The multi-function display is too dark/bright	When the ignition switch is in the ACC, [Auto Dimmer Meter Illumination] function does not work. Turn the ignition switch to   (On).
	When using applications such as Apple CarPlay/Android Auto Maps, you can select daytime mode or nighttime mode. D P. 37

-(

Troubleshooting



\_\_\_\_

● 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 214 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Audio System Trouble

Symptom	Cause/remedy
Audio system cannot operate.	Certain manual functions and settings are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out menu until the vehicle is stopped.
Set menu in [Vehicle setting] does not be reflected or inoperable.	In [Vehicle setting], certain items cannot be selected and display information is limited when the ignition switch is in ACC. The set menu will be reflected to the previous setting when the ignition switch is turned to (On).
When turning the ignition switch to <b>O</b> (Off) and <b>I</b> (On) continuously.	Since the system restart takes time, it may take time until the screen is appeared.
High temperature/overcurrent protection	To protect the system, some operations may be limited temporarily. The system automatically recovers after the cause is solved.
About Idling Stop system (GL1800BD/DA)	When the Idling Stop system is activated, sound may not come out temporarily for system protection, but sound will recover automatically.
Radio receiver sensitivity Except V GS/VI GS type	The sensitivity of receiver is affected by the object which interrupts a radio wave nearby the radio antenna (top of the right saddlebag).
Software update	The statements in this owner's manual may not match your vehicle's Audio System after performing the software update (map data update; Models equipped with Navigation System).

If the problem continues after the above-described inspection, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.



Troubleshooting

#### **Electrical Trouble**

#### **Battery Goes Dead**

Charge the battery using a motorcycle battery charger.

Remove the battery from the vehicle before charging.

Do not use an automobile-type battery charger, as these can overheat a motorcycle battery and cause permanent damage.

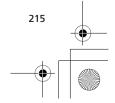
If the battery does not recover after recharging, contact your dealer.

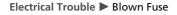
#### NOTICE

Jump starting using an automobile battery is not recommended, as this can damage your vehicle's electrical system.

#### **Burned-out Light Bulb**

All light bulbs on the vehicle are LEDs. If there is an LED which is not turned on, see your dealer for servicing.





#### **Blown Fuse**

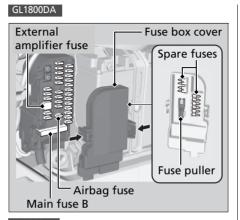
Before handling fuses, see "Inspecting and Replacing Fuses." ■ P. 166

#### Fuse Box Fuses

- 1. Remove the left side cover. ₽ P. 174
- 2. Remove the fuse box cover.
- **3.** Pull the fuses out one by one with the fuse puller and check for a blown fuse. Always replace a blown fuse with a spare fuse of the same rating.
- Spare fuses and fuse puller are provided on back side of the fuse cover.
- **4.** Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

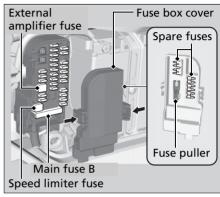
#### Main Fuse B, Speed Limiter Fuse and External Amplifier Fuse

To check and replace the main fuse B, speed limiter fuse and external amplifier fuse, see your dealer for servicing.

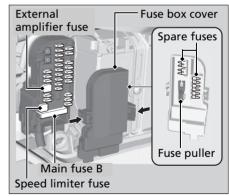


# GL1800BD





#### GL1800B



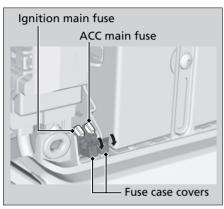
216

Troubleshooting

<u>→ 21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 217 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

Electrical Trouble 
Blown Fuse

#### Ignition Main Fuse & ACC Main Fuse



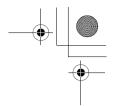
- 1. Remove the left side cover. ≥ P. 174
- 2. Remove the fuse case covers.
- **3.** Pull the fuses out one by one with the fuse puller and check for a blown fuse. Always replace a blown fuse with a spare fuse of the same rating.
  - Spare fuses and fuse puller are provided on back side of the fuse box cover.
- **4.** Install the parts in the reverse order of removal.

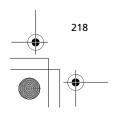
#### NOTICE

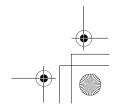
If a fuse fails repeatedly, you likely have an electrical problem. Have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.

# Troubleshooting

\_\_\_\_\_\_ 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 218 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分







# Information

Service Diagnostic Recorders	Ρ.	220
Keys	Ρ.	221
Instruments, Controls, & Other Features	Ρ.	231
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/		
Android Auto	Ρ.	240
Caring for Your Vehicle	Ρ.	242
Storing Your Vehicle	Ρ.	245
Transporting Your Vehicle	Ρ.	245
You & the Environment	Ρ.	246
Serial Numbers	Ρ.	247
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPN	ЛS	)
Explanation	Ρ.	248

-

Fuels Containing Alcohol	. P. 249
Catalytic Converter	.P. 250
Software Upgrades	.P. 251

Service Diagnostic Recorders

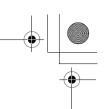
#### Service Diagnostic Recorders

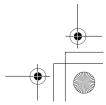
#### Except II GS/III GS/ VGS/VI GS type

Your vehicle is equipped with servicerelated devices that record information about powertrain performance and riding conditions.

The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner. However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.









#### Keys

#### **Emergency Key**

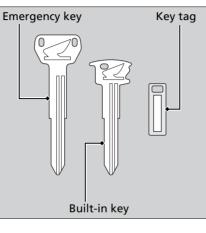
This vehicle has emergency key, built-in key and a key tag with a key number. Store the emergency key and key tag in a safe location.

Normally, the built-in key should be stored in the Honda SMART Key. ■ P. 203

To make a duplicate key, take the key and key tag to your dealer or a locksmith.

The emergency key and built-in key are used to unlock the left saddle bag in an emergency. ■ P. 203

Do not store the emergency key in the saddlebags, fairing pocket, travel trunk GL1800/DA or shelter case Except GL1800DA



#### Honda SMART Key

Carrying the Honda SMART Key allows you to perform the following operations:

- Locking or unlocking the steering and activating or deactivating the electrical system
- Releasing the left and right saddlebags and travel trunk
- Releasing the fairing pocket

The ID number of the Honda SMART Key is on the ID tag. You can also unlock the steering (if it is locked) and activating the electrical system by inputting the ID number.

Information

Always carry both the emergency key and ID tag, but separate from the Honda SMART Key, to avoid losing all of them at the same time.

Also store a copy of your ID number in a safe place other than your vehicle.

continued 221



Keys

#### Keys

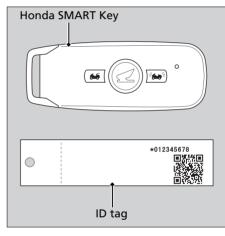
The Honda SMART Key contains electronic circuits. If the circuits are damaged, the Honda SMART Key will not allow you to perform any operations.

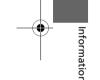
- Do not drop the Honda SMART Key or set heavy objects on them.
- Protect the Honda SMART Key from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not scratch or puncture.
- Do not store near any magnetized products such as a magnetized key chain.
- Always keep the Honda SMART Key away from electric appliances such as a TV, radio, PC or low-frequency massage device.
- Keep the Honda SMART Key away from liquids. If it gets wet, dry it immediately with a soft cloth.
- Keep the Honda SMART Key away from the vehicle while washing the vehicle.
- Do not burn.
- Do not wash in an ultrasonic cleaner.

- If fuel, wax, or grease adhere to the Honda SMART Key, wipe it off immediately to avoid cracking or warping.
- Do not disassemble the Honda SMART Key other than when changing a battery. Only the case of the Honda SMART Key can be disassembled. Do not disassemble other parts.
- Do not lose your Honda SMART Key. If you lose it, you will need to register a new Honda SMART Key. See your dealer with your emergency key and ID tag for registration.

The battery in the Honda SMART Key system normally lasts about 2 years.

To get add additional Honda SMART Key, take the Honda SMART Key and the vehicle to your dealer.





#### **EU Directive**

This Honda SMART Key system complies with the RE (Radio Equipment) Directive (2014/53/EU).

# CE

[GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] Manufacturer NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION 6368 Nenjo-zaka, Okusa, Komaki, Aichi 485-0802, JAPAN

# NIDEC

#### Importer

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium HONDA TURKIYE A.S. SEKERPINAR MAHALLESI YANYOL SOKAK. NO:1 41420, CAYIROVA / KOCAELI / TURKEY

## HONDA

Receiver Category of these radio equipment is Category 2, which is referred to EN 300 220-1.

Description(s) of frequency band(s) and maximum radiofrequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) are included in the document of the full text of the EU declaration of conformity. Please access following URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Cesk [Czech]

Společnost NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] dodržuje Nařízení 2014/53/EU. Podrobné informace naleznete na následující URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Dansk [Danish]

NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION erklærer herved, at [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] er i overensstemmelse med Direktiv 2014/53/EU. For detaljer, bedes du adgang til følgende webadresse:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Deutsch [German]

Hiermit erklärt NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, dass [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] in Übereinstimmung mit der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU steht. Für Einzelheiten greifen Sie auf folgende URL zu:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Eesti [Estonian]

Käesolevaga teatab NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, et [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] on kooskõlas Direktiiviga 2014/53/EL. Üksikasjade nägemiseks külastage võrguaadressi: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### English [English]

Hereby, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, declares that [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. For details, please access the following URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Español [Spanish]

Por la presente, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, declara que [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] cumple con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. Para más información, acceda a la siguiente URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Ελληνικά [Greek]

Με το παρόν, η ΝΙDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, δηλώνει ότι τα [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] συμμορφώνονται με την Οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Για λεπτομέρειες, επισκεφτείτε την εξής ιστοσελίδα:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Français [French]

Par le présent document NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, déclare que [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] sont conformes à la Directive 2014/53/UE. Pour plus d'informations visitez la page suivante:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Italiano [Italian]

Con la presente, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, dichiara che [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] sono conformi alla Direttiva 2014/53/UE. Per ulteriori dettagli, accedere al seguente URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Latviski [Latvian]

Ar šo uzņēmums NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION apstiprina, ka [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] atbilst Direktīvas 2014/53/ES prasībām. Detalizētu informāciju, lūdzu, skatiet šajā vietrādī URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/Irfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Lietuviu [Lithuanian]

Šiuo dokumentu NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION pareiškia, kad [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Norėdami išsamesnės informacijos, apsilankykite šiuo URL adresu:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy





Kevs

#### Keys

#### Nederlands [Dutch]

Hiermee verklaart NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, dat [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] in overeenstemming zijn met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. Klik voor meer informatie op de onderstaande link:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Malti [Maltese]

NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, tiddikjara li [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] huma fkonformità mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. Ghal dettalji, jekk joghģbok aċċessa I-URL li ģejja: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Magyar [Hungarian]

Alulirott, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, kijelenti, hogy [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] megfelel a 2014/53/EU Irányelvnek. A részletekért nyissa meg a következő URL hívatkozást:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Polski [Polish]

NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION niniejszym oświadcza, że produkty [ GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T ] spełniają wymogi Dyrektywy 2014/53/UE. Szczegółowe informacje są dostępne pod następującym adresem URL:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Português [Portuguese]

Por isto, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, declara que [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] estão em conformidade com a Directiva 2014/53/UE. Para mais detalhes, favor aceder acessar ao seguinte URL:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Slovenski [Slovenian]

224

S tem podjetje NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, izjavlja, da so [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] v skladu z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Za podrobnosti odprite naslednji URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Slovenské [Slovak]

Spoločnosť NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že [ GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T ] dodržiava Smernicu 2014/53/EU. Podrobné informácie nájdete na nasledujúcej URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Suomi [Finnish]

NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, ilmoittaa täten, että [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] noudattaa Direktiivin 2014/53/EU vaatimuksia. Saadaksesi lisätietoja, käytä seuraavaa URL-osoitetta: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/Irfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Svenska [Swedish]

NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION förklarar jag härmed att [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] är i enlighet med Direktiv 2014/53/EU. För detaljer vänligen använd följande webbläsare: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Íslenska [Icelandic]

Hér, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, segir að [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] þeir eru í samræmi við Úrskurði 2014/53/ESB. Fyrir frekari upplýsingar, vinsamlegast aðgang að eftirfarandi URL:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Norsk [Norwegian]

Herved NIDEČ MOBILITY CORPORATION, erklærer at [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] samsvar med Resolusjon 2014/53/EU. For ytterligere informasjon, vennligst sjekk følgende URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Türk [Turkish]

NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, şirketi [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] ürünlerinin 2014/53/EU Direktifi ile uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. Ayrıntılar için lütfen aşağıdaki URL'ye erişin: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Româna [Romanian]

Prin prezenta, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, declară că [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] sunt în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Pentru detalii, accesați următorul URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/ifequipdocs/eudocy

#### български [Bulgarian]

С настоящия документ NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, декларира, че [ GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T ] съответстват с Директива 2014/53/EC. За подробности посетете следния адрес:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Hrvatski [Croatian]

Ovim putem tvrtka NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION objavljuje da je [ GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T ] sukladna s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Za pojedinosti posjetite sljedeći URL: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Македонски [Macedonian]

Со оттука, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION изјавува дека [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] е во согласност со Директивата 2014/53/EU. За подетални информации, отворете ја следнава УРЛ:

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Shqiptar [Albanian]

Këtu, NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, deklaron se [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] janë në përputhje me Direktivën 2014/53/EU. Për hollësi, ju lutem hapni URL-në e mëposhtme: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### Црногорски / Crnogorski [Montenegrin]

Ovim putem NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION, izjavljuje da su [GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T] u skladu sa Odredbom 2014/53/EU. Za više detalja, pristupite sljedećoj URL adresi: https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/eudocy

#### ქართული [Georgian]

კომპანია NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION აცხადებს , რომ [ GHR-H015-R, GHR-H015-T ] არის 2014/53/EU დირექტივის სრულ შესაბამისობაში . დაწვრილებითი ინფორმაციისთვის იხილეთ შემდეგი ბმული :

https://www.nidec.com/en/nidec-mobility/rfequipdocs/ eudocy



Coin / button cell battery notification from NIDEC MOBILITY CORPORATION CAUTION

- Do not swallow a coin type battery:
- Do not ingest battery, Chemical Burn Hazard
- This product contains a coin / button cell battery. If the coin / button cell battery is swallowed, it can cause severe internal burns in just 2 hours and can lead to death.
- Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the product and keep it away from children. If you think batteries might have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.

- To prevent an explosion or leakage of flammable liquid or gas:
- Do not replace the battery with an incorrect type. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.
- Do not dispose of a battery into a fire or incinerator, or by mechanically crushing or cutting the battery.
- Do not use, store, or take a battery any place where it may be exposed to extremely high temperature or extremely low air pressure.



#### Argentina only

<GHR-H015-T>
COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONAL

#### H-20064

#### Paraguay only

[GHR-H015-R]

- 2017-08-I-0000260
- DIESA.S.A.
   AVADA.DR.EUSEBIO AYALA KM 4, 5
   ASUNCION
   REPUBLIC OFPARAGUAY

[GHR-H015-T]

- 2017-08-I-0000259
- DIESA.S.A. AVADA.DR.EUSEBIO AYALA KM 4, 5 ASUNCION REPUBLIC OFPARAGUAY

#### Morocco only

#### <GHR-H015-R>

AGRÉÉ PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément :MR 14385 ANRT 2017 Date d'agrément :2017/7/24

#### <GHR-H015-T>

AGRÉÉ PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément : MR 14386 ANRT 2017 Date d'agrément : 2017/7/24

#### Guyana/Honduras only

#### FCC CAUTION

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



Kevs



#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 226 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Keys

#### UAE only

#### <GHR-H015-R>

TRA REGISTERED No: ER56494/17 DEALER No: 0033578/10

#### <GHR-H015-T>

TRA REGISTERED No: ER56496/17 DEALER No: 0033578/10

#### Jordan only <GHR-H015-R>

Information

<GHR-HUTS-R> UNIT ASSY 6368 NENJO-ZAKA, OKUSA, KOMAKI-CITY, AICHI 485-0802, JAPAN

<GHR-H015-T> FOB ASSY 6368 NENJO-ZAKA, OKUSA, KOMAKI-CITY, AICHI 485-0802, JAPAN

#### Oman only

#### <GHR-H015-R>

OMAN-TRA TRA/TA-R/4565/17 D090024

#### <GHR-H015-T>

OMAN-TRA TRA/TA-R/4570/17 D090024

#### South Africa only

#### <GHR-H015-R>



#### <GHR-H015-T>



#### Israel only

#### <GHR-H015-R>

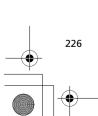
מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-60970 אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

#### <GHR-H015-T>

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-60971 אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

#### Vietnam only







#### Keys

#### Ukraine only [GHR-H015-R]



#### ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ № RTS.UKR.355-84/19

 Радіообладивання (виріб, тва, вомер партії чи серійлий вомер): Блук прибнокотередавльной автокосбланий торговської марке. Оштов моделі GHR-H015-R системи, досилиційного відкравания дверей (UNIT ASSY).

 Найменувания та адреса впробяться абе його уполноваженого представника: Упозвоважений представника: ТОВ "Разій Тест Синцирт", Україна, код сДУПОУ 19206151, 03115, м. Київ, вул. Львівсава, 22-а, м. 135, (Допувність: "Омрен Отеморугів Електропіяс Ко., Лат. " ("OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., LIA"), Японія, від 02.08.2018).

3. Ца декларація відповідності вядява підособясту відповідальність виробника: "ОМГОН Аутомотупів Еквитропіке Ко., Лгд,", 6368 Непьйозава, Окуса, місто Комакі, профектура Аічі, 485-0802, Японія ("ОМКОН Аитопойти» Еlectronics Co., Lid.", 6361 Nenjozaka, Okusa, Komaki-city, Aichi-pref.

485-0802, Japan).

4. Об'єкт декларації (ідентнфікація радіобладиання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простежуваність; може вадиочти кольорове чітке зображения у разі потреби для ідентифікації занимченого радіообладиання): блоє прийоморедиальний агонооблацов моделі GHR-H015-R системи дистащійного

відкривання дверей (UNIT ASSY).

5. Об'єкт декларації відновідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів: Технічного регламенту радіосбладивня;

6. Посвлания на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що буди застосовані, або посвлания на інші технічні специфікації, щодо вких декларусться відповідність (з заличенники ідентифікаційного помора, ворей та дати видавину):

Пуюстя "Технічного реглементу радіообларнания"	Стандарти	Намер пратоколу вжоробужань	Випробувальна лабораторія (атостат акрелятації)/ додаткова інформація
Застосовлей станалр	ru, ozo sacanoveni za "Repeatory szcioso sizatosizatori paziotizazat		niers, asona wagan npenyantaho
n.7	<b>ACTY ETSI EN 300 220-2:2017</b>	8027 mia 16.64.2019	BULPTT YHLEPT (28227)
Застосовані сталаврт	e, un ne sezoreni zo "flepeziey sauin eizmeizmeri paziofizza	натьных стандартів, відпові вняя суттежны вимогам <sup>16</sup>	gniers now nagat sprayeriule
n.6, atinau 1	ДСТУ EN 62368-1:2017 (гільни Долаток Р)	\$027 eta 16.64.2019	841 PST 5'H, LIPT (2H227)
n.6, atlanc 1	2CTY EN 301 489-1:2014 (m. 8.2, 9.2, 9.3) (1 ypkrynautam 2CTY ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009)	8027 nix 16.04.2019	841 PVT YH,JIPT (10227)
8.7	ACTY ETSI EN 300 220-2:2012	8927 als 16.04.2019	BU PIT YHAIPT (2H227)

 Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІЛПРИСМСТВА УКРАЙСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ЛІССІЛЛИИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАЛІО І ТЕЛЕВАЧЕНИЯ: Рестивній мовер: ЦА.ТК. 23

(найменувания, цаятифиаційний момер згіцко з регстром призначених органія) вихондав <u>РЕКСИНДТИЦУ ТВШУ</u>

та видав сертифікат експертизи типу № 2037.12-СЕТ від 10.05.2019.



8. У відновідних випадках опис компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі програмного забеличення, завляжи экому радіообладнання функціонує за приглачентвами іна вке пошперосться дія декларації про відновідність:

Версія 13 (SW/FW venion), вка виливає на дотримання сучтевих ванот: СРЦІ: ТА2H00, СРЦ2: РАОР20 Варсія виконавля виробу (IIW venion), яка виливае на дотримання сучтевки вакон сучтевки вакон

Процесор, що виконує функції формування радіочасютних сагналів: TDA5235GEG

Підписано від імені та за дорученням: "Омрев Отемоутів Електронікс Ко., Лтд." ('OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., Ltd.").

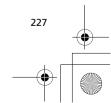
Японія, уповноваженим представником - ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт".

#### 9. Додаткова інформація:

A specie resource on opportunities. Amesca surveillant resource for the species of the specie



Information



#### Keys

#### [GHR-H015-T]



#### ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ № RTS.UKR.355-85/19

 Радіообладняння (виріб, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер): Радіопулат автомобільний торговельної марки Omron моделі GHR-H015-T системи дистанційного відорявання дореф (FOB ASSY).

2. Найменувания та адреса виробника вбо його уповноваженого представника: Уповноважений представник - ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт", Україна, код СДРПОУ 39205151, 03115, м. Київ, вул. Лавівська, 22-а, к. 135, Довіреність "Омрен Отемоутів Електроніке Ко., Лта, " СОМКОЛ Анастоніче Елестоніс So., L4D", Лявнікі, від 02.08.2018).

 Ця декларація відповідності вядана під особнету відповідальність виробника: "ОМРОН Аутомоутів Електропікс Ко., Лид.", 6368 Неньйонака, Окуса, місто Комакі, профектура Лікі, 485-6002, Яполія

("OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., Ltd.", 6368 Nenjozaka, Okusa, Komaki-city, Aichi-pref. 485-0802, Japan).

4. Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація радіообладнання, яка дає эмогу забезпечити його простежуваність; може включати кольорове чітке зображення у разі потреби для ідентифіканії запаченого радіообладняния):

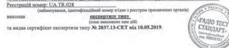
Радіопульт автомобільний моделі GHR-H015-Т системи дистанційного відкривання дверей (FOB ASSY).

 Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів: Технічного регламенту радіообладнання;

6. Посилання на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були застосовані, або посилання на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких докларусться відповідність (із зализченням ідсигифікаційного помоера, вереїї та даги видання):

Пункти "Технічного регламенту радіообладиання"	Стандарти	Немер протеколу випробувань	Випробувальна лабораторія (атестат акредитації) дадяткова інформація	
Застосовані стандар	ти, що вилючені до "Переліку націона відновідності радіообладня		ність яким надає презумпцію	
n.7	ДСТУ ETSI EN 360 220-2:2017	8028 nin 16.04.2019	BU PIT YH,UPT (2H227)	
Застосовані стандарт	и, що не вилючені до "Переліку націон відповідності радіооблядня		дність яким надає презумпція	
n.6, afixan 1	ДСТУ EN 62368-1:2017 (тільког Додятон: F), ДСТУ EN 50385:2007	8028 nig 16.04.2019	вцріт ундірт (2н227)	
n.6, a63au 2	ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014 (пп. 8.2, 9.2, 9.3) (з урахуваннам ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009)	8028 nin 16.04.2019	ВЦ РІТ УНДІРТ (2Н227)	
n.7	<b>ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 220-2:2012</b>	8028 nia 16.04.2019	BIL PIT YH,UPT (2H227)	

 Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності <u>ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІДПРИЄМСТВА</u> "УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ДОСЛІДНИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАДІО І ТЕЛЕБАЧЕННЯ".



8. У відповідних випадках опис компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі программого забелнечення, заядики якому радіообладивния функціонує за приличеннями і на яке повиросться зія декслариції про відповідність:

Версія II3 (SWFW version), яка вплинає на дотримання суттемих анмог: 9190; Версія виконання авробу (HW version), яка вплинає на дотриманов суттемих вимог: PWB 2611945-0; Сіясий:2613703-3; Пороасеор, во воковуче функції формування радіочастотних сигналія: NCF29A2

#### 9. Додаткова інформація:

Aspeca supoSintrina: Oxpen Ornewyrin Enercponiac Ko, Jirza, Lie Oblie (OMRON Automotive Electronics Co. Ltd. (lida site)), KljpiGaunil, sdiero Iiaa, spopkercypa Harano, 399-2565, Anostia (Kirlbayashi, Iida-ity), Ngano-Prefecture 399-2565 Japan).

Пілинсано від імені та за дорученням: "Омрен Отемоутів Електроніє Ко., Лгд." ("OMRON Automotive Electronics Co., Ltd."), Японія, упоавновжения представняком - ТОВ "Радіо Теет Ставдарт".



228

•

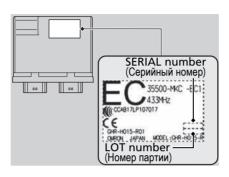
Information

<u>21 GL1800 32MKC830.book 229 ページ 2020年10月30日</u>金曜日 午後1時26分

# Russia only [GHR-H015-R]

- Model name (Название модели): UNIT COMP SMART
- Manufacturer (Изготовитель): OMRON
- Country of origin (Страна производства): JAPAN (Япония)
- Postal address (Адрес изготовителя): OMRON Automotive Electronics Co.Ltd. 6368 Nenjo-zaka,Okusa,Komaki,Aichi 485-0802 JAPAN

 Importer (Импортер): Honda Motor RUS LLC
 1, Pridorozhnaya Street, Sharapovo settlement, Marushkinskoe district, Moscow 143350 Russia (ООО «Хонда Мотор РУС»
 108809, Москва, поселение Марушкинское д. Шарапово, ул. Придорожная, стр. 1)



#### [GHR-H015-T]



- Model name (Название модели): FOB ASSY
- Manufacturer (Изготовитель): OMRON
- Country of origin (Страна производства): JAPAN (Япония)
- Postal address (Адрес изготовителя): OMRON Automotive Electronics Co.Ltd. 6368 Nenjo-zaka,Okusa,Komaki,Aichi 485-0802 JAPAN

 Importer (Импортер): Honda Motor RUS LLC
 1, Pridorozhnaya Street, Sharapovo settlement, Marushkinskoe district, Moscow 143350 Russia (ООО «Хонда Мотор РУС»
 108809, Москва, поселение Марушкинское д. Шарапово, ул. Придорожная, стр. 1)







<u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 230 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Keys

The instruction about the reading of a Manufacturing dates. Lot number specification: Номер лота Спецификация (Year, Month, date from left): (Слева направо: год, месяц, число.) Manufacture year: Год выпуска Month: Месяц производства Date: Дата выпуска 2 digit (The last two digits of the year): 2 цифры (последние две цифры календарного года) 2 digit (01-12): 2 цифры (от 01 до 12) 2 digit (01-31): 2 цифры (от 01 до 31)



230

Information

# Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### **Ignition Switch**

Leaving the ignition switch in **(**On) or ACC with the engine stopped will drain the battery.

Do not turn the ignition switch while riding.

#### **Engine Stop Switch**

Do not use the engine stop switch except in an emergency. Doing so when riding will cause the engine to suddenly turn off, making riding unsafe.

If you stop the engine using the engine stop switch, turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off). Failing to do so will drain the battery.

#### Odometer

The display locks at 999,999 when the read-out exceeds 999,999.

#### Tripmeter

The tripmeters return to 0.0 when each read-out exceeds 9,999.9.

#### **Owner's Manual**

The owner's manual, Navigation System manual, registration and insurance information can be stored in the left saddlebag.

#### Ignition Cut-off System

A banking (lean angle) sensor automatically stops the engine and fuel pump if the vehicle falls over. To reset the sensor, you must turn the ignition switch to **O** (Off) and back to **I** (On) before the engine can be restarted.

#### **Throttle by Wire System**

This model is equipped with a Throttle by Wire System.

Do not put magnetized items or items susceptible to magnetic interference near the right handlebar switches. Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### **Automatic Brightness Control**

The backlight brightness of the meter will be controlled automatically when "AUTO" is selected on the brightness setting. Ambient brightness is detected by the photosensor.

Do not damage or cover the photosensor. Otherwise, the automatic brightness control may not work properly.

#### Photosensor





continued 231

Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### Audio System

#### **EU Directive**

This audio system complies with the RE (Radio Equipment) Directive (2014/53/EU).

# CE

MKC AU is in compliance with the latest releases of directives RoHS (2011/65/EU) and ELV (2000/53/EC), and also the REACH regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006. Marking of polymer parts acc. to VDA 260 respectively EN ISO 1043.

#### Български [Bulgarian]

С настоящото Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Со., Ltd декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение МКС AU е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/EC. Цялостният текст на EC декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: (\*1)

#### Čeština [Czech]

Tímto Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení MKC AU je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: (\*1)

#### Dansk [Danish]

Hermed erklærer Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, at radioudstyrstypen MKC AU er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: (\*1)

#### Deutsch [German]

Hiermit erklärt Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, dass der Funkanlagentyp MKC AU der Richtlinie 2014/ 53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: (\*1)

#### Eesti [Estonian]

Käesölevaga deklareerib Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, et käesölev raadioseadme tüüp MKC AU vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: (\*1)

#### English [English]

Hereby, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd declares that the radio equipment type MKC AU is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: (\*1)

#### Español [Spanish]

Por la presente, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico MKC AU es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: (°1)

#### Ελληνική [Greek]

Με την παρούσα ο/η Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός MKC AU πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: (\*1)

#### Français [French]

Le soussigné, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type MKC AU est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: (\*1)

#### Hrvatski [Croatian]

Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa MKC AU u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: (\*1)

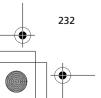
#### Italiano [Italian]

Il fabbricante, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio MKC AU è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: (\*1)

#### Latviski [Latvian]

Ar šo Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd deklarē, ka radioiekārta MKC AU atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: (\*1)





#### ) 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分



#### Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### Lietuvių [Lithuanian]

Aš, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, patvirtinu, kad radijo įrenginių tipas MKC AU atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto

adresu: (\*1)

#### Nederlands [Dutch]

Hierbij verklaar ik, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, dat het type radioapparatuur MKC AU conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: (\*1)

#### Malti [Maltese]

B'dan, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' taghmir tar-radju MKC AU huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan I-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: (\*1)

#### Magyar [Hungarian]

Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd igazolja, hogy a MKC AU tipusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: (\*1)

#### Polski [Polish]

Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego MKC AU jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: (\*1)

#### Português [Portuguese]

O(a) abaixo assinado(a) Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio MKC AU está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaração de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet: (\*1)

#### Română [Romanian]

Prin prezenta, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd declară că tipul de echipamente radio MKC AU este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: (\*1)

#### Slovensko [Slovenian]

Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme MKC AU skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: (\*1)

#### Slovensky [Slovak]

Harman Áutomotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu MKC AU je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ.

Úplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: (\*1)

#### Suomi [Finnish]

Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi MKC AU on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen.

EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: (\*1)

#### Svenska [Swedish]

Härmed försäkrar Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd att denna typ av radioutrustning MKC AU överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: (\*1)

#### Íslenska [Icelandic]

Hér, Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co, Ltd lysir yfir að radíobúnaður tegund MKC AU er í samræmi við tilskipun 2014/53 / EU. The fullur texti af ESB-samræmisyfirlýsing er í boði á eftirfarandi veffangi: (\*1)

#### Norsk [Norwegian]

Herved Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd erklærer at radioutstyrstypen MKC AU er i samsvar med direktiv 2014/53 / EU. Den fullstendige teksken i EU-erklæring er tilgjengelig på følgende internettadresse: (\*1).

Türkçe [Turkish]

Harman Automotive Electronic Systems (Suzhou) Co., Ltd, MKC AU, türü telsiz ekipmanının, 2014/53/AB sayılı Direktifine uygun olduğunu beyan etmektedir.

AB uygunluk beyanının tam metnine aşağıdaki internet adresinden ulaşılabilir: (\*1)

*Bluetooth*\*: 2400-2483.5 MHz < 10 dBm

(\*1) http://www.harman.com/compliance

#### Paraguay only





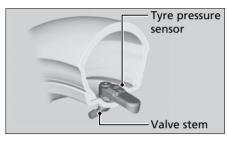




Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

# Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start to ride the vehicle and it monitors the pressure in your tyres while riding.



Each tyre has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tyre becomes significantly low while riding, the sensor in that tyre sends a signal that causes the low tyre pressure indicator to turn on.

Information

234

Modifying the TPMS on your vehicle could make the systems ineffective.

#### **EU Directive**

This Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) complies with the RE (Radio Equipment) Directive (2014/53/EU).



Manufacturer

- Manufacturer's name: PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD.
- Registered trademark:



This trademark is registered in the following countries: UK, Italy, Austria, Greece, Germany, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Luxembourg, Portugal.

- Manufacturer's address: 1300-1 Yokoi, Godo-cho, Anpachi-gun, Gifu, 503-2397 JAPAN
- Operating frequency band: 433.05 434.79MHz
- Maximum radio-frequency power: 100dBµVm@3m(Radiated)

#### Importer

Honda Motor Europe Ltd - Aalst Office Wijngaardveld 1 (Noord V) 9300 Aalst - Belgium HONDA TURKIYE A.S. SEKERPINAR MAHALLESI YANYOL SOKAK. NO:1 41420, CAYIROVA / KOCAELI / TURKEY

## HONDA

#### English [English]

Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. declares that the radio equipment type PMV-CE71 is in compliance with Directive 2014/ 53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

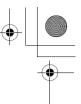
#### Suomi [Finnish]

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi PMV-CE71 on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Nederlands [Dutch]

Hierbij verklaar ik, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD., dat het type radioapparatuur PMV-CE71 conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/end/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### \_\_\_\_\_\_ 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 235 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分



#### Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### Français [French]

Le soussigné, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type PMV-CE71 est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Svenska [Swedish]

Härmed försäkrar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. att denna typ av radioutrustning PMV-CE71 överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse

finns på följande webbadress: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Dansk [Danish]

Hermed erklærer PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., at radioudstyrstypen PMV-CE71 er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på

følgende internetadresse:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Deutsch [German]

Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dass der Funkanlagentyp PMV-CE71 der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Ελληνική [Greek]

Με την παρούσα ο/ηPACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός PMV-CE71 πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ ΕΕ.Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρ φωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Italiano [Italian]

Il fabbricante, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio PMV-CE71 è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Español [Spanish]

Por la presente, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD.declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico PMV-CE71 es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Português [Portuguese]

O(a) abaixo assinado(a) PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio PMV-CE71 está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaração de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Malti [Maltese]

B'dan, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., niddikjara li dan it-tip ta' taghmir tar-radju PMV-CE71 huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/ 53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzioni ta' konformità tal-UE huwa

disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ģej: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Eesti [Estonian]

Käesolevaga deklareerib PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., et käesolev raadioseadme tüüp PMV-CE71 vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni tälelik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Magyar [Hungarian]

PAČIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. igazolja, hogy a PMV-CE71 típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Slovenské [Slovak]

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu PMV-CE71 je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EÚ. Úplné EÚ vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Cesk [Czech]

Tímto PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení PMV-CE71 je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/ EU.

Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Slovenski [Slovenian]

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme PMV-CE71 skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Lietuviu [Lithuanian]

Aš, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., patvirtinu, kad radijo irenginių tipas PMV-CE71 atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/



continued 23



#### <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830.book 236 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### Latviski [Latvian]

Ar šoPACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka radioiekārta PMV-CE71 atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

Polski [Polish]

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radiowego PMV-CE71 jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/ 53/UE.

Pelny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/enq/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Íslenska [Icelandic]

Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.LTD. yfir því að PMV-CE71 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 2014/53/EU.

Samræmisyfirlýsing er einnig aðgengileg á eftirfarandi vefslóð: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### български [Bulgarian]

С настоящото PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение PMV-CE71 е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/EC.

Цялостният текст на EC декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Româna [Romanian]

Prin prezenta, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declară că tipul de echipamente radio PMV-CE71 este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: https://www.pacific-ind.co.ip/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/ Црногорски / Crnogorski [Montenegrin] U ovom dokumentu, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., I TD. deklariše

da je radio oprema model PMV-CE71 usklađena sa Directive 2014/53/EU. Cio tekst EU deklaracije usklađenosti dostupan je na slijedećoj interent adresi: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Српски [Serbian]

Овим, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. изјављује да је радио опрема типа PMV-CE71 усклађена са Directive 2014/53/EU. Комплетан текст декларације ЕУ за усаглашеностдоступан је на следећој веб адреси:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/



#### Hrvatski [Croatian]

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa PMV-CE71 u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Shqiptar [Albanian]

Këtu, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO., LTD. deklaron se pajisja radio PMV-CE71 është në përputhje me Directive 2014/53/EU. Teksti i plotë i deklaratës së konformitetit të BE-së gjendet në adresën e mëposhtme të internetit: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Türk [Turkish]

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., şirketi PMV-CE71 ürünlerinin 2014/53/EU Direktifi ile uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. Ayrıntılar için lütfen aşağıdaki URL'ye erişin: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Norsk [Norwegian]

PACIAC INDUSTRIAL CO.JTD. erklærer at MWEP1 er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU, Samsvarserklæringen i fulltekst er tilgjengelig på følgende internettadresse: https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

#### Ukraine only



- Модель: PMV-CE71
- Виробник: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
- Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd., 1300-1 Yokoi, Godo-cho. Anpachi-Gun, Gifu-Pref., 503-2397 Јарап/Японія.
- Діапазон частот, МГц : 433,05 434,79
- Максимальна вихідна потужність передавача, мВт (дБм):1,0 (0);
- Справжнім Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd. заявляє, що радіопередавач системи контролю тиску та температури в шинах автомобіля відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на вебсайті за такою адресою:

https://www.pacific-ind.co.jp//eng/products/car/tpms/doc/ukr/



#### UAE only

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER56407/17
DEALER No:
DA0063612/11

#### Jordan only

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Transmitter Model: PMV-CE71 Manufacture: Pacific Industrial Co.,Ltd. Address :1300-1 Yokoi, Godo-cho, Anpachi-gun, Gifu-Pref., 503-2397 Japan

#### Argentina only

CNE COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES H-17784

#### Israel only

א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משל" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחומי. למתר - לא מוען מתפרעות ולא הפרעה למערכת אחרות הפועלות העדים. ברק "בפעולת בבין"ל שמישו מצמי של הלוקו בלבדת הדצר וביטור מרשיון הפעולה אלחוסי. בא מוד מדער בקר לא ביל מדי מדי ברשיון מורח ממשיר התקשורת. גם אוסר הכלי מקף איך וריק עבור ציד אלחוסי, הפועל בתחום תדרים של H3305-433.05

#### Morocco only

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément :MR 14298 ANRT 2017 Date d'agrément :05/07/2017

#### Guyana only

MADE IN JAPAN PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. PMV-CE71 PAXPMVCE71

#### South Africa only



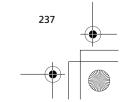
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) transmitter

#### Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### Vietnam only







21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 238 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

Instruments, Controls, & Other Features

#### Russia only

#### Информация о соответствии продукции требованиям Технических регламентов Таможенного союза (вкладыш к руководству по эксплуатации)

 Изготовитель, адрес Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd. 1300-1 Yokoi Godo-cho, Anpachi, Gifu, 503-2397 Japan

 Наименование и место нахождение уполномоченного лица (импортер —если партия) ООО «РадиоСерт»

Адрес: пр-т Вернадского, д. 24, пом. III, к.3, г. Москва, 119454, Россия

#### 3. Информация для связи

пр-т Вернадского, д. 24, пом. III, к.3, г. Москва, 119454, Россия

4. Торговая марка PACIFIC

#### 5. Наименование и обозначение

- название: PMV-CE71
- обозначение: Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Transmitter

#### Характеристики и параметры Рабочая частота: 433.92 МГц

#### 7. Назначение

Система используется для слежения за давлением и темпереатурой автомобильных шин и индикации информации об их состоянии. Передатчик отправляет приемнику (не относится к обозначению этой модели) данные о давленнии внутри шин и температуре.

#### 8. Питание

3 В постоянного тока Тип батареи: Одна встроенная литий-ионная батарея Ёмкость: 350 мА·ч

#### 9. Страна производства Япония

# 10. Соответствует ТР ТС - ТР ТС 020/2011 «Электромагнитная совместимость технических средств»

- 11. Правила и условия безопасной эксплуатации (использования) Диапазон рабочих температур: -20 ~ +105°C
- 12. Правила и условия монтажа

Монтаж оборудования производится в соответствии с «Руководством по установке», прилагаемому к данному оборудованию.

#### 13. Правила и условия хранения

Оборудование должно храниться в закрытых помещениях, в заводской упаковке, при температуре окружающей среды от 20 до 70 °С и относительной влажности не выше 95%. Разрешено штабельное хранение до 10 ярусов.

#### 14. Правила и условия перевозки (транспортировки) Перевозка и транспортировка оборудования допускается только в заводской упаковке, любыми видами транспорта, без ограничения расстояний.

 Правила и условия реализации Нет ограничений

#### 16. Правила и условияутилизации

По окончании срока службы оборудования, обратитесь к официальному дилеру для утилизации оборудования.

#### 17. Правила и условия подключения к электрической сети и другим техническим средствам, пуска, регулирования и введения в эксплуатацию Производится в соответствии с «Руководством по установке», прилагаемом к данному оборудованию.

#### Сведения об ограничениях в использовании с учетом предназначения для работы в жилых, коммерческих и производственных зонах

Оборудование предназначено для использования в жилых, коммерческих и производственных зонах без воздействия опасных и вредных производственных факторов. Оборудование предназначено для круглосуточной непрерывной эксплуатации без постоянного присутствия обслуживающего персонала

- Информациюя о применяемых мерах при неисправности оборудования
  - В случае обнаружения неисправности оборудования: выключите оборудование от электрической сети
  - обратитесь в сервисный центр или к авторизованному дилеру для получения консультации или ремонта оборудования
- 20. Месяц и год изготовления и (или) информация о месте нанесения и способе определения года изготовления Дата изготовления указана в первых пяти знаках серийного номера устройства:
  - Первые два символа указавают на год производства (напр. 13 → 2013 год)
  - Третий символ указывает на месяц производства (напр. 6 → Июнь)
  - Последние два символа указывают на день производства (напр. 10 → десятое число месяца)

#### 21. Знак соответствия

Этикетка будет нанесена для «Руководства Пользователя» производителем автомобиля.



22. Информация об оценке соответсвия Соответсвтует техничекому регламенту TC 020

Номер декларации соответствия: ЕАЭС № RU Д-JP.АЛ55.В.00697



Information

#### Assist-slipper Clutch System

#### GL1800/B

The assist-slipper clutch system helps to prevent the rear tyre from locking up when the deceleration of your vehicle produces a strong engine braking effect. It also makes the clutch lever operation feel lighter.

Use only MA classification engine oil for your vehicle. Using engine oil other than MA classification oil could result in damage to the assist-slipper clutch system.

#### **Airbag System**

#### GL1800DA

#### Event Data Recorders

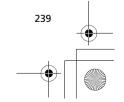
Your vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders.

These devices record airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.







Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

#### Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

#### OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE IOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED. STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS **REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING** OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE. VEHICLE LOCATION. VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO. INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

#### DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY OUALITY. PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE." WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY **OUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR** PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR



21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 241 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE. GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS: HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME: HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION, FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE

UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/ OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS. HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.



**Caring for Your Vehicle** 

#### Caring for Your Vehicle

Frequent cleaning and polishing is important to ensure the life of your Honda. A clean vehicle makes it easier to spot potential problems.

In particular, seawater and salts used to prevent ice on roads promote the formation of corrosion. Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after riding on coastal or treated roads.

#### Washing

- Allow the engine, muffler, brakes, and other high-temperature parts to cool before washing.
- **1.** Rinse your vehicle thoroughly using a low pressure garden hose to remove loose dirt.
- 2. If necessary, use a sponge or a soft towel with mild cleaner to remove road grime.
  - Clean the windscreen, headlight lens, panels, and other plastic components with extra care to avoid scratching them. Avoid directing water into the air cleaner, muffler, and electrical parts.

- **3.** Thoroughly rinse your vehicle with plenty of clean water and dry with a soft, clean cloth.
- **4.** After the vehicle dries, lubricate any moving parts.
  - Make sure that no lubricant spills onto the brakes or tyres. Brake discs, pads, drum or shoes contaminated with oil will suffer greatly reduced braking effectiveness and can lead to a crash.
- 5. Apply a coat of wax to prevent corrosion.
  - Avoid products that contain harsh detergents or chemical solvents. These can damage the metal, paint, and plastic on your vehicle. Keep the wax clear of the tyres and brakes.
  - If your vehicle has any mat painted parts, do not apply a coat of wax to the mat painted surface.

#### Washing Precautions

Follow these guidelines when washing:

- Do not use high-pressure washers:
  - High-pressure water cleaners can damage moving parts and electrical parts, rendering them inoperable.
  - ► Water in the air intake can be drawn into the throttle body and/or enter the air cleaner.
- Do not direct water at the muffler:
  - ► Water in the muffler can prevent starting and causes rust in the muffler.
- Dry the brakes:
  - Water adversely affects braking effectiveness. After washing, apply the brakes intermittently at low speed to help dry them.
- Do not direct water in the left saddlebag:
  - Water in the left saddlebag can damage your documents and other belongings.
- Do not direct water at the air cleaner:
   Water in the air cleaner can prevent the engine from starting.



Informatior

21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 243 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

- Do not direct water near the headlight.
  - The headlight's inside lens may fog temporarily after washing or while riding in the rain. This does not impact the headlight function. However, if you see a large amount of water or ice accumulated inside the lens(es), have your vehicle inspected by your dealer.
- Do not use wax or polishing compounds on mat painted surface:
  - Use a soft cloth or sponge, plenty of water, and a mild detergent to clean mat painted surfaces. Dry with a soft clean cloth.

#### Aluminium Components

Aluminium will corrode from contact with dirt, mud, or road salt. Clean aluminium parts regularly and follow these guidelines to avoid scratches:

- Do not use stiff brushes, steel wool, or cleaners containing abrasives.
- Avoid riding over or scraping against curbs.

#### Panels

Follow these guidelines to prevent scratches and blemishes:

- Wash gently using a soft sponge and plenty of water.
- To remove stubborn stains, use diluted detergent and rinse thoroughly with plenty of water.
- Avoid getting petrol, brake fluid, or detergents on the instruments, panels, or headlight.

#### Windscreen

Keep the windscreen raised after turning off the electrical system to make it easy to clean. ■ P. 153

Using plenty of water, clean the windscreen with a soft cloth or sponge. (Avoid using detergents or any kind of chemical cleaner on the windscreen.) Dry with a soft, clean cloth.

#### NOTICE

To avoid possible scratching or other damage, use only water and a soft cloth or sponge to clean the windscreen.

For a dirtier windscreen, use a diluted neutral detergent with a sponge and plenty of water. Make sure to wash off all the detergent. (Detergent residue may cause windscreen cracks.)

Replace the windscreen if scratches cannot be removed and they obstruct clear vision.

Take care to keep battery electrolyte, brake fluid, or other chemical solvents off the windscreen and screen garnish. They will damage the plastic.



**Caring for Your Vehicle** 

#### Instrument Panel

The instrument panel is coated with a special surface treatment to prevent reflection and glare.

Wipe any moisture (including rainwater) on the instrument panel with a dry, soft cloth immediately.

Using plenty of water, clean the instrument panel with a soft cloth or sponge. For a dirtier instrument panel, use a diluted neutral detergent with a sponge and plenty of water. Make sure to wash off all the detergent. Dry with a soft, clean cloth.

Take care to keep battery electrolyte, brake fluid, or other chemical solvents off the instrument panel. They will damage the special surface treatment of the instrument panel.

#### **Exhaust Pipe and Muffler**

The exhaust pipe and muffler are stainless steel but may become stained by mud or dust.

To remove mud or dust, use a wet sponge and a liquid kitchen abrasive, then rinse well with clean water. Dry with chamois or a soft towel.

If necessary, remove heat stains by using a commercially available fine texture compound. Then rinse by the same manner as removing mud or dust.

When the exhaust pipe and muffler are painted, do not use a commercially available abrasive kitchen cleaning compound. Use a neutral detergent to clean the painted surface on the exhaust pipe and muffler. If you are not sure if your exhaust pipe and muffler are painted, contact your dealer.

#### NOTICE

Even though the exhaust is made of stainless steel, it can become stained. Remove all marks and blemishes as soon as they are noticed.



Informatior

#### **Storing Your Vehicle**

If you store your vehicle outdoors, you should consider using a full-body cover. If you won't be riding for an extended period, follow these guidelines:

 Wash your vehicle and wax all painted surfaces (except mat painted surfaces).
 Coat chrome pieces with rust-inhibiting oil.

#### • GL1800/DA

Place your vehicle on its centre stand and position a block so that both tyres are off the ground.

#### GL1800B/BD

Place your vehicle on a maintenance stand and position a block so that both tyres are off the ground.

- After rain, remove the body cover and allow the vehicle to dry.
- Remove the battery (■ P. 173) to prevent discharge. Charge the battery in a shaded, well-ventilated area.

After removing your vehicle from storage, inspect all maintenance items required by the Maintenance Schedule.

### Transporting Your Vehicle

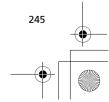
**Storing Your Vehicle** 

If your vehicle needs to be transported, it should be carried on a motorcycle trailer or a flatbed truck or trailer that has a loading ramp or lifting platform, and motorcycle tie-down straps. Never try to tow your vehicle with a wheel or wheels on the ground.

#### NOTICE

Towing your vehicle can cause serious damage to the transmission.





You & the Environment

#### You & the Environment

Owning and riding a vehicle can be enjoyable, but you must do your part to protect the environment.

#### **Choose Sensible Cleaners**

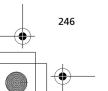
Use a biodegradable detergent when you wash your vehicle. Avoid aerosol spray cleaners that contain chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) which damage the atmosphere's protective ozone layer.

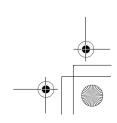


#### **Recycle Wastes**

Put oil and other toxic wastes in approved containers and take them to a recycling centre.

Call your local or state office of public works or environmental services to find a recycling centre in your area, and to get instructions on how to dispose of nonrecyclable wastes. Do not place used engine oil in the trash, or pour it down a drain or on the ground. Used oil, petrol, coolant, and cleaning solvents contain poisons that can hurt refuse workers and contaminate drinking water, lakes, rivers, and oceans.



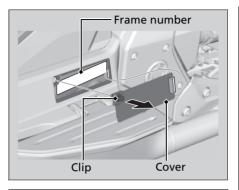


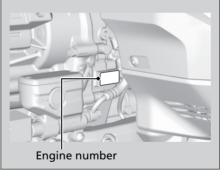
# Serial Numbers

### **Serial Numbers**

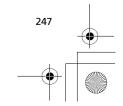
The frame and engine serial numbers uniquely identify your vehicle and are required in order to register your vehicle. They may also be required when ordering replacement parts. To check the frame number, remove the cover by releasing the clip.

You should record these numbers and keep them in a safe place.









Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Explanation

#### Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Explanation

Both tyres should be checked monthly when cold, and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the tyre information label.

(If your vehicle has different tyres than those indicated on the vehicle tyre information label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

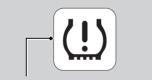
As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure indicator when one or more of your tyres significantly underinflated.

Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure indicator illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Riding on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to

tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the rider's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the low tyre pressure indicator.



Low tyre pressure indicator

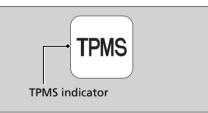
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS indicator displays the symbol "TPMS" when illuminated.

When the TPMS indicator is illuminated,

the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS indicator after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.





Intormation

#### **Fuels Containing Alcohol**

Some conventional fuels blended with alcohol are available in some locales to help reduce emissions to meet clean air standards. If you plan to use blended fuel, check that it is unleaded and meets the minimum octane rating requirement.

The following fuel blends can be used in your vehicle:

- Ethanol (ethyl alcohol) up to 10% by volume.
  - Petrol containing ethanol may be marketed under the name Gasohol.

The use of petrol containing more than 10% ethanol may:

- Damage the painting of the fuel tank.
- Damage the rubber tubes of the fuel line.
- Cause corrosion of the fuel tank.
- Cause poor drivability.

#### NOTICE

Use of blended fuels containing higher than approved percentages can damage metal, rubber, plastic parts of your fuel system.

If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms or performance problems, try a different brand of petrol.



**Fuels Containing Alcohol** 

**Catalytic Converter** 

## **Catalytic Converter**

This vehicle is equipped with two three-way catalytic converters. Each catalytic converter contains precious metals that serve as catalysts in high temperature chemical reactions that convert hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) in the exhaust gasses into safe compounds.

A defective catalytic converter contributes to air pollution and can impair your engine's performance. A replacement unit must be an original Honda part or equivalent. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's catalytic converters.

- Always use unleaded petrol. Leaded petrol will damage the catalytic converters.
- Keep the engine in good running condition.

A poorly running engine can cause the catalytic converter to overheat causing damage to the converter or the vehicle.

• If your engine is misfiring, backfiring, stalling, or otherwise not running properly, stop riding and turn off the engine. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.





## Software Upgrades

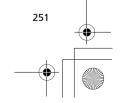
¢

# Audio/Navigation System Software and Map Software Upgrades

Honda is continually expanding the scope of the Map software and the Audio/ Navigation System software. The softwares are updated to correspond with new version releases.

For the software updates, contact your dealer.





secondary / final)

# Specifications

# GL1800BD/DA

 $\odot$ 

Main Components			
Overall length	GL1800BD	2,475 mm (97.4 in)	
	GL1800DA	2,615 mm (103.0 in )	
Overall width	905 mm (35.6 in)		
Overall height	GL1800BD	1,340 mm (52.8 in)	
Overall height	GL1800DA	1,430 mm (56.3 in)	
Wheelbase	1,695 mm (66.7 in)		
Minimum ground clearance	130 mm (5.1 in)		
Caster angle	30° 30′		
Trail	110 mm (4.3 in)		
	GL1800BD		
	III E/III ED/ II TU type	367 kg (809 lb)	
Curk weight	II GS/V GS/ III U type	366 kg (807 lb)	
Curb weight	GL1800DA		
	III E/III ED/TU/ II TU/III SA type	390 kg (860 lb)	
	III GS/VI GS/ III U type	389 kg (858 lb)	
Maximum weight	GL1800BD	205 kg (452 lb)	
capacity*1	GL1800DA	203 kg (448 lb)	
	Travel trunk (GL1800DA)	9.0 kg (20.0 lb)	
Maximum luggage	Each saddlebag	9.0 kg (20.0 lb)	
weight	Fairing pocket	2.0 kg (4.5 lb)	
	Shelter case (GL1800BD)	3.0 kg (6.6 lb)	

Passenger capacity	Rider and 1 passeng	er
Minimum turning radius	3.4 m (11.2 ft)	
Displacement	1,833 cm3 (111.8 cu-	in)
Bore x stroke	73.0 x 73.0 mm (2.8	7 x 2.87 in)
Compression ratio	10.5:1	
Fuel	Unleaded petrol Recommended: 91 RON or higher	
Fuel containing alcohol	ETHANOL up to 10%	6 by volume
Tank capacity	21 litres (5.5 US gal, 4.6 Imp gal)	
Battery	GYZ20L 12 V-20 Ah (10 HR) / 21.1 Ah (20 HR)	
	1st	2.166
	2nd	1.695
	3rd	1.304
Gear ratio	4th	1.038
Gearratio	5th	0.820
	6th	0.666
	7th	0.521
	Reverse	4.373
Reduction ratio (primary /	1.795 / 0.972 / 2.615	

#### Service Data

Service D	ala	
Tyre size	Front	130/70R18M/C 63H
Tyle size	Rear	200/55R16M/C 77H
Tyre type		Radial, tubeless
	Front	BRIDGESTONE G853 RADIAL G
Recommended		DUNLOP D423F
Tyre	Rear	BRIDGESTONE G852 RADIAL G
	Rear	DUNLOP D423
	Normal	Permitted
Tyre category of	Special	Not Permitted
use*2	Snow	Not Permitted
	Moped	Not Permitted
	Front	250 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 36 psi)
Tyre air pressure	Rear	280 kPa (2.80 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 41 psi)
Minimum tread	Front	1.5 mm (0.06 in)
depth	Rear	2.0 mm (0.08 in)
Spark plug	(standard)	CR6HSB-9 (NGK)
Spark plug gap		0.80 to 0.90 mm (0.031 to 0.035 in)
Idle speed		730 ± 100 rpm

\*2 EU regulation

\*1 Including rider, all luggage, and accessories



Specifications

Specifications

	Honda 4-stroke mo	torcycle oil API Service	Bulbs	
Recommended		higher, excluding oils	Headlight	LED
engine oil	marked as "Energy Conserving" or		Brakelight	LED
5	T 903 standard MA	ng," SAE 10W-30, JASO	Taillight	LED
		4.4 litres (4.6 US gt, 3.9	Front turn signal	LED
	After draining	Imp qt)	Rear turn signal	LED
	After draining &	4 C litere (4 O LIC et 4 O	License plate light	LED
ngine oil	engine oil filter change	4.6 litres (4.9 US qt, 4.0 Imp qt)	Fog light (GL1800DA)	LED
pacity	After draining,		Fuses	
	engine & clutch oil	4.6 litres (4.9 US qt, 4.0	Ignition main fuse	30 A
	filter change	Imp qt)	ACC main fuse	20 A
	After disassembly	5.6 litres (5.9 US qt, 4.9	Main fuse B	120 A
	, and a subseries of	Imp qt)	External amplifier fuse	40 A
ecommended nal drive oil	Hypoid gear oil SA	E 80	Other fuse	30 A, 15 A, 10 A, 5 A
nal drive oil	After draining	140 cm <sup>3</sup> (4.7 US oz, 4.9 Imp oz)		
capacity After disassembly	160 cm <sup>3</sup> (5.4 US oz, 5.6 Imp oz)			
Recommended brake fluid	Honda DOT 4 Brake	e Fluid		
Cooling system Capacity	2.90 litres (3.06 US	qt, 2.55 lmp qt)		
Recommended coolant	Pro Honda HP Cool	ant		

Torque Specifications 8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m, 5.9 lbf·ft) cap

Specifications

#### **Specifications**

-

#### GL1800/B Main Components

Overall length	GL1800	2,615 mm (103.0 in
Overall length	GL1800B	2,475 mm (97.4 in)
Overall width	925 mm (36.4 in)	
Quarall baight	GL1800	1,430 mm (56.3 in)
Overall height	GL1800B	1,340 mm (52.8 in)
Wheelbase	1,695 mm (66.7 in)	
Minimum ground clearance	130 mm (5.1 in)	
Caster angle	30° 30′	
Trail	110 mm (4.3 in)	
	GL1800	
	II E/II ED/TU/ III SA type	385 kg (849 lb)
Curb weight	III GS/VI GS type	384 kg (847 lb)
	GL1800B	
	III E/III ED/II TU type	366 kg (807 lb)
	III GS/VI GS type	365 kg (805 lb)
Maximum weight	GL1800	206 kg (454 lb)
capacity*1	GL1800B	205 kg (452 lb)
	Travel trunk (GL1800)	9.0 kg (20.0 lb)
Maximum luggage weight	Each saddlebag	9.0 kg (20.0 lb)
weight	Fairing pocket	2.0 kg (4.5 lb)
	Shelter case	3.0 kg (6.6 lb)
Passenger capacity	Rider and 1 passeng	ger
Minimum turning radius	3.4 m (11.2 ft)	

Displacement	1,833 cm <sup>3</sup> (111.8 cu-	in)	
Bore x stroke	73.0 x 73.0 mm (2.87 x 2.87 in)		
Compression ratio	10.5:1		
Fuel	Unleaded petrol Recommended: 91 RON or higher		
Fuel containing alcohol	ETHANOL up to 109	% by volume	
Tank capacity	21 litres (5.5 US gal,	4.6 Imp gal)	
Battery	GYZ20L 12 V-20 Ah (10 HR)	/ 21.1 Ah (20 HR)	
	1st	2.200	
	2nd	1.416	
Gear ratio	3rd	1.035	
Gearratio	4th	0.820	
	5th	0.666	
	6th	0.521	
Reduction ratio			

1.795 / 0.972 / 2.615

(primary /

secondary / final)

Service Data	ata	
Tyre size	Front	130/70R18M/C 63H
Tyle size	Rear	200/55R16M/C 77H
Tyre type		Radial, tubeless
	Front	BRIDGESTONE G853 RADIAL G
Recommended		DUNLOP D423F
Tyre	Rear	BRIDGESTONE G852 RADIAL G
	Nedi	DUNLOP D423
	Normal	Permitted
Tyre category of	Special	Not Permitted
use*2	Snow	Not Permitted
	Moped	Not Permitted
	Front	250 kPa (2.50 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 36 psi)
Tyre air pressure	Rear	280 kPa (2.80 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 41 psi)
Minimum tread	Front	1.5 mm (0.06 in)
depth	Rear	2.0 mm (0.08 in)
Spark plug	(standard)	CR6HSB-9 (NGK)
Spark plug gap		0.80 to 0.90 mm (0.031 to 0.035 in)
Idle speed		730 ± 100 rpm

\*2 EU regulation

254

Specifications

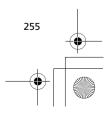
 $\odot$ <u>21</u>GL1800 32MKC830. book 255 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### Specifications

Recommended engine oil	Honda 4-stroke motorcycle oil API Service Classification SG or higher, excluding oils marked as "Energy Conserving" or "Resource Conserving," SAE 10W-30, JASO T 903 standard MA		
	After draining	3.5 litres (3.7 US qt, 3.1 Imp qt)	
Engine oil capacity	After draining & engine oil filter change	3.7 litres (3.9 US qt, 3.3 Imp qt)	
	After disassembly	4.4 litres (4.6 US qt, 3.9 Imp qt)	
Recommended final drive oil	Hypoid gear oil SAE 80		
Final drive oil capacity	After draining	140 cm <sup>3</sup> (4.7 US oz, 4.9 Imp oz)	
	After disassembly	160 cm <sup>3</sup> (5.4 US oz, 5.6 Imp oz)	
Recommended brake (clutch) fluid	Honda DOT 4 Brake Fluid		
Cooling system capacity	2.90 litres (3.06 US qt, 2.55 Imp qt)		
Recommended coolant	Pro Honda HP Coolant		

Bulbs	
Headlight	LED
Brakelight	LED
Taillight	LED
Front turn signal	LED
Rear turn signal	LED
License plate light	LED
Fog light (GL1800)	LED
Fuses	
Ignition main fuse	30 A
ACC main fuse	20 A
Main fuse B	120 A
External amplifier fuse	40 A
Speed limiter fuse	60 A
Other fuse	30 A, 15 A, 10 A, 5 A

Torque Specifications 8 N·m (0.8 kgf·m, 5.9 lbf·ft) cap



#### 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 256 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

### Index

#### Α A/M Switch...... 58, 131 Accessories ..... 21 Adjustable Windscreen ..... 153 Air Temperature Gauge...... 41 AIRBAG Indicator ...... 51, 194 Airbag System..... 15, 70 AM Radio ..... 101 Android Auto...... 90, 116, 240 Android Phone ..... 106 Answer Back System...... 65 Apple CarPlay ...... 88, 113, 240 AT MODE ..... 131 AUDIO Button ..... 54 Audio System...... 73, 232 Audio Setting ...... 79 Basic Operations ...... 75 Bluetooth® Setting ...... 91 Component Locations...... 74 General Setting ...... 84 Sound Setting......79 To Pause a Track ..... 111 To Play a Track ..... 110 Auto Cancel Turn Signal ...... 33 Available Driving Distance...... 43 Average Fuel Mileage ...... 30

В
Back Button 54
Back Switch 56, 57
Battery 165, 173
Bluetooth®
Handsfree Calling 120
Headset Pairing
Phone Pairing
Supported Profiles
Supported Version 91
Brake Lever 184
Brakelight Switch 180
Brakes
Fluid 178
Lever Adjustment 184
Pads Wear 179
Parking 180
Braking 17
Brightness

С
Caring for Your Vehicle 242
Catalytic Converter 250
Clock 27, 85
Clutch
Fluid 182
Lever Adjustment 184
Clutch Lever 184
Clutch System 182
Clutch Temperature Indicator 51, 193
Colour Label
Combined ABS 17
Combined ABS Indicator 53
Comfort & Convenience
Adjustment 150
Coolant 176
Coolant Temperature
Gauge 47, 190, 196
Crash 4
Cruise Control 41, 139
Cruise Control Lever 58
Cruise Control Main Switch 58
CRUISE MAIN Indicator 50, 139
CRUISE SET Indicator 50, 139
Current Fuel Mileage 31

Index

) 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 257 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

D

۲

D (AT MODE) Indicator	45
Digital Clock Adjustment	85

#### Ε

Elapsed Time			31
Electrical Adjustable			
Suspension		34,	185
Electrical Trouble			215
Emergency Key			221
Emergency Stop Signal			143
Engine			
Number			247
Oil		167,	175
Overheats			190
Starting			128
Stop Switch	. 58,	128,	231
Will Not Start			189
Environment			246
Equipment			
Fairing Pocket			146
Helmet Holder			148
Helmet Holder Hanger			148
Saddlebags			
Shelter Case			148
Tool Kit			
Travel Trunk			145

F
Fairing Pocket 146
Final Drive Oil 168, 177
Flooded Engine 129
FM Radio 101
Fog Light Button 54
Fog Light Indicator 53
4-way Key/ENT Switch 56, 57
Front Brake Lever Adjustment 184
Front Suspension 185
Fuel
Average Fuel Mileage 30
Current Fuel Mileage 31
Gauge 44, 195
Low Fuel Indicator 50
Recommended 144
Remaining 44
Tank Capacity 144
Fuels Containing Alcohol 249
Fuses 166, 216

### G

#### н

Handle Grip Heater	150
Handle Grip Heater Button	54
Handle Grip Heater Indicator 48,	195
Hazard Switch	58
· · ·	

Headlight Dimmer Switch 56, 57	
Helmet Holder 148	
High Beam Indicator 51	
High Coolant Temperature	
Indicator 53, 190	
Hill Start Assist 142	
Hill Start Assist (HSA)	
Indicator 52, 142, 194	
Home Button 54	
Home Switch 56, 57	
Honda Selectable Torque Control	
(Torque Control) 138	
Honda SMART Key 221	
Answer Back Button	
Battery	
LED 60	
ON/OFF Button	
UNLOCK Button	
Honda SMART Key Battery 186	
Honda SMART Key Does Not	
Operate Properly 200	
Honda SMART Key Indicator 51, 192	
Honda SMART Key System 62	
Horn Button 56, 57	
HSTC (Honda Selectable Torque	
Control) 36	



● 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 258 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

#### 1

1
Idling Stop Button 58
Idling Stop Indicator 52
Idling Stop OFF Indicator 46
Idling Stop System 34, 67
Ignition Cut-off System
Banking Sensor 231
Side Stand 181
Ignition Switch 55, 128, 231
Indicators 50
INFO Button 54
Instruments
INFO 1 display 40
INFO 2 display 45
INFO 3 display 47
Multi-information Display 27
Instruments, Controls,
& Other Features 231
Interface Dial 54
iPhone 106
iPod 106
L
Labels 6
Load Limits 21
Loading Guidelines 21
Low Fuel Indicator 50

М
Maintenance
Fundamentals 163
Importance 157
Safety 157
Schedule 158
Map Colour
Maximum Weight Limit 21
MODE Button 58
Modifications21
Moving in Reverse 135
MT MODE 131
Multi-information Display 27
Basic Operations
Helpful Information 32
Information Bar 29
Navigation
System Information
Vehicle Information 30

#### Ν

N-D Switch	58, 131
Neutral Indicator	52

0	
Odometer 4	2
Oil	
Engine 167, 17	'5
Final Drive 168, 17	7
Overheating 19	90
Owner's Manual 149, 23	31

#### Ρ

I	•
	Parking 19
	Parking Brake 66
	Parking Brake Indicator 53
	Parking Brake Lever
	Parts Location 22
	Passenger Seat Heater
	Indicator 49, 152
	Passenger Seat Heater Switch 60, 152
	Petrol
	PGM-FI (Programmed Fuel Injection)
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp
	(MIL) 51, 191
	Phone
	To End a Call 125
	To Make a Call 120
	To Receive a Call 125
	Protective Apparel 14
I	

Q Quick Engine Starting ...... 129

258

Index

①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 ①
 □
 ①
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □
 □

R

Radio	
FM/AM	101
Radio Data System (RDS)	102
Rear Suspension	185
Recommended	
Brake Fluid	167
Clutch Fluid	167
Coolant	168
Engine Oil	167
Final Drive Oil	168
Fuel	
Refuelling	144
Remote Transmitter	147
Removal	
Battery	173
Left Engine Side Cover	174
Side Cover	
Repair Kit	205
Reverse Button	
Reverse Mode Switch	57
Rider Seat Heater Button 54,	151
Rider Seat Heater Indicator 48,	151
Riding Mode	136
Riding Mode Indicator 45,	
Riding Precautions	
-	

S
Safety Guidelines 3
Safety Labels 6
Safety Precautions 14
Seat Heater 151
Seat Heater Indicator 48, 49, 196
SEL Button 54
Serial Numbers 247
SET Button 54
Shift Down Switch (-) 56
Shift Up Switch (+) 56
Shifting Gears 130
Side Stand 181
Side Stand Ignition Cut-off
System 181
Side Stand Indicator 48
Siri 115
Software Upgrades 251
Source/Private Mode Switch 56, 57
Specifications 252
Speedometer 26
Start button 58
Starting the Engine 128
Steering Lock 61
Steering Lock Indicator 51
Stopping Engine 129, 231

Storage	
Equipment	145
Fairing Pocket	146
Helmet Holder	148
Owner's Manual	149
Saddlebags	145
Shelter Case	148
Tool Kit	149
Travel Trunk	145
Storing Your Vehicle	245
Suspension Preload	
Adjustment 34,	185
Suspension Preload Indicator	. 49
Switches	. 54

#### т

Tachometer
Throttle 183, 231
Tool Kit 149, 172
Torque Control 20, 138
Torque Control Indicator 52, 192
Torque Control OFF Indicator 52
TPMS Indicator 50, 194
Transporting Your Vehicle 245
Travel Trunk & Saddlebags Open
Indicator 47
Tripmeter 42, 231
Turn Signal Indicators 50, 52
Turn Signal Switch 56, 57
Tyre Pressure Gauge 44

# Index

● 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 260 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

# U

U2B	
Audio Files	107
Compatible Devices	106
USB Connection	108
USB Device	106
USB Flash Drive	106

#### ۷

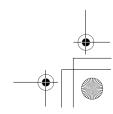
Voice Control Switch	56, 57
Voice Search	119
VOL Lever	56, 57

W	
Walking Speed Mode	133
Walking Speed Mode Indicator	46
Walking Speed Mode Switch	56
Warning Indicators On or Flashing.	191
Washing Your Vehicle	242
Weight Limit 2	1, 252
Windscreen 15	3, 243
Windscreen Adjusting	
Lever 56, 5	7, 153
Windscreen Ventilation Louver	154

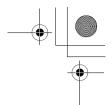
Index

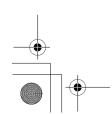


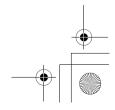




● 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 261 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分







● 21 GL1800 32MKC830. book 262 ページ 2020年10月30日 金曜日 午後1時26分

